Title
Korean Sŏn Buddhism in the 19th Century: Paekp'a, Ch'ŏuī and Buddhist-Confucian Interaction at the End of the Chosŏn Dynasty

Permalink
https://escholarship.org/uc/item/8kd5t02x

Author
Kim, Seong-Uk

Publication Date
2013

Peer reviewed|Thesis/dissertation
Korean Sŏn Buddhism in the 19th Century:
Paekp’’a, Ch’o’ui and Buddhist-Confucian Interaction
at the End of the Chosŏn Dynasty

A dissertation submitted in partial satisfaction of the
requirements for the degree Doctor of Philosophy
in Asian Languages and Cultures

by

Seong-Uk Kim

2013
ABSTRACT OF THE DISSERTATION

Korean Sŏn Buddhism in the 19th Century:
Paekp’a, Ch’oŭi and Buddhist-Confucian Interaction
at the End of the Chosŏn Dynasty

by

Seong-Uk Kim
Doctor of Philosophy in Asian Languages and Cultures
University of California, Los Angeles, 2013
Professor Robert E. Buswell, Chair

Korean Buddhism is often described as showing few signs of creativity and being virtually dead in the latter half of Chosŏn (1392-1910), the last dynasty of Korea, because of harsh persecution by the Confucian ruling class. My dissertation explores Korean Sŏn (C. Chan) Buddhism in the early nineteenth century, focusing on the monks Paekp’a Kūngsŏn (1767-1852) and Ch’oŭi Īisun (1786-1866). The purpose of this study is not only to challenge this common misperception, but also to present a more accurate picture of Chosŏn Buddhism, particularly its unique development of Sŏn theories. My dissertation, first of all, demonstrates the presence of active interactions between Buddhism and Confucianism during late Chosŏn. In particular, it shows that many Confucian literati provided extensive financial and ideological support for Buddhism and pursued their interest in the religion as an alternative for Confucianism. As a
case study of the development of Korean Sŏn theories of this time, my dissertation explores Paekp’a and Ch’oůi’s unique ideas on the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo (doctrinal studies). Paekp’a reconciled the soteriological tension between the Heze and Linji schools, regarding the utility of doctrinal studies. In doing so, he integrated the *kanhwa* (*C. kanhua*) technique of the Linji school into the Heze scheme of “sudden enlightenment followed by gradual cultivation.” With this synthetic path, Paekp’a limited the soteriological validity of doctrinal teachings or studies by describing them as unable to achieve the final perfect enlightenment on their own. Ch’oůi, on the other hand, argued for the unity of of Sŏn and Kyo by introducing new definitions of these two strands of Buddhism. He argued that Sŏn and Kyo were not fundamentally different from each other. Their different rhetorical styles not only reflect the same quality of the Buddha’s enlightenment but also serve equally as skillful means to help sentient beings with different capabilities attain the ultimate Buddhist goal. Hence, for Ch’oůi, there is no hierarchy between Sŏn and doctrinal teachings. My dissertation not only undermines the colonialist image of Korean Buddhism, but also demonstrates the uniqueness and continuity of Korean Sŏn Buddhism within the East Asian Buddhist tradition.
The dissertation of Seong-Uk Kim is approved.

William M. Bodiford

John B. Duncan

Richard Von Glahn

Robert E. Buswell, Committee Chair

University of California, Los Angeles

2013
DEDICATION

To My Father,

Kim Byeong-Su 金炳洙 (1941-2005)
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

List of Tables viii
Abbreviations and Conventions ix
Acknowledgements x
Vita xii

## INTRODUCTION 1

### CHAPTER ONE. Yangban and Buddhism in the Second Half of Chosŏn Dynasty 15

1. Yangban Attitude toward Buddhism 16
2. Development of Buddhism in Late Chosŏn 36
3. Concluding Remarks 52

### CHAPTER TWO. Chan (Sŏn) and Doctrinal Teachings (Jiao/ Kyo) 55

1. The Unity of Chan and Doctrinal Teachings: The Heze Approach to Chan 57
2. Chan outside the teaching: The Linji approach to Chan 70
3. Relinquishing the teaching and entering into Sŏn (K. Sagyo Ipsŏn 摒教入禪):
   Korean Synthesis of the Heze and Linji Soteriologies 83
4. Concluding Remarks 93

### CHAPTER THREE. Linji’s Teaching of “Three Statements, Three Mysteries, and Three Essentials” 95

1. Linji’s Teaching of “Three Statements, Three Mysteries, and Three Essentials” 97
2. Discussion on Linji’s Teaching in China 99
3. Discussion on Linji’s Teaching in Korea 110
4. Concluding Remarks

CHAPTER FOUR. Paekp’a’s Three-Fold Taxonomy of Sŏn

1. The Two-fold Pardigm: *Hyangsang* and *Hyangha*
2. The Taxonomy of Paekp’a: Promoting the Linji lineage
3. Paekp’a’s Taxonomy and Chinul’s Three Mysteries: Paekp’a’s Soteriology
4. Concluding Remarks

CHAPTER FIVE. Ch’oůi’s Two-Fold Taxonomy of Sŏn

1. Ch’oůi’s Definitions of the Key terms used in Paekp’a’s Taxonomy
2. Ch’oůi’s Criticism of Paekp’a’s Theory
3. Ch’oůi’s Soteriology
4. Sŏn and Kyo
5. Concluding Remarks

CONCLUSION

BIBLIOGRAPHY
LIST OF TABLES

Table 1. Monks’ literary collections in the eighteenth century 47
Table 2. Zongmi’s framework of the mind 64
Table 3. Zongmi’s taxonomy 66
Table 4. Two-fold paradigm for the mind 136
Table 5. Paekp’a’s taxonomy of the five houses 146
Table 6. First two mind-transmissions 150
Table 7. Soteriologies of Paekp’a and Chinul 164
Table 8. Ch’o’ui’s correspondences of Linji’ teaching 188
Table 9. Rhetorical styles of Sŏn and Kyo in Ch’o’ui’s thought 199
Table 10. Sŏltu Yuhyŏng 212
Table 11. Udam Honggi 214
ABBREVIATIONS AND CONVENTIONS

HPC: Han’guk Pulgyo chŏnsŏ 韓國佛教全書.

T: Taishō shinshū daizōkyō 大正新修大藏經.

X: Wanzi xuzang jing 卍字續藏經.

C.: Chinese


K.: Korean.

- Citations from the Taishō shinshū daizōkyō, or the Wanzi xuzang jing are listed in the following manner: Title and fascicle number of the text; abbreviation (T), text number, and volume number of the canonical collection; page number, register (a, b, or c), and line number(s).

  E.g., Yuanwu foguo chanshi yulu 圓悟佛果禪師語錄 4, T1997.47.729c05-c07

- Citations from the Han’guk Pulgyo chŏnsŏ are listed in the following manner: Title and fascicle number of the text; abbreviation (HPC) and volume number of the collection; page number, register (a, b, or c), and line number(s).

  E.g., P’yŏnyangdang chip 鞭羊堂集 2, HPC 8, 253c08-12

- Transliteration of Asian languages follows the Hanyu pinyin system for Chinese, the modified Hepburn system for Japanese, and the McCune-Reischauer system for Korean. Transliterations in the main text of the dissertation are followed by alternative language pronunciations with the abbreviations “C.” or “K.”

The title of an Asian text is introduced in its original romanization:

  E.g., Vimalakīrtinirdeśa

  Huayan jing suishu yanyi chao 華嚴經隨疏演義鈔
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This dissertation could not have been finished and even begun without the constant advice, guidance, and encouragement of my advisor, Professor Robert E. Buswell, Jr. I would like to thank him for developing my vague ideas into a fully-fledged research on the nineteenth century Korean Sŏn Buddhism. I am also deeply grateful of his kindness of thoroughly reading and giving valuable comments on my original draft. I want to render my cordial gratitude to my dissertation committee members for their insightful comments and suggestions to improve the quality of my dissertation. Professor William M. Bodiford helped me shape my understanding of some of key ideas in my dissertation by reading Chinese Chan texts together. Professor John B. Duncan and Professor Richard Von Glahn offered their valuable comments and suggestions on historical materials.

Special thanks go to the U.C.L.A. Center for Korean Studies and assistant director Sejung Kim, as well as the Center for Buddhist Studies and assistant director Jennifer Jung Kim, for their financial and moral support. Without them, this dissertation might not have been completed. I extend my appreciation to the Korea Foundation for its research fellowship during the 2011-12 academic year. It helped me further my dissertation research.

There are not enough words to express my gratitude to my family. My mother, Min Won-Rye, has never wavered in her loving support, no matter what path I have chosen. I would like to share the joy of the completion of my dissertation with her. I want to thank my sister, Hye-Seon, and my brother, Seong-Gun, not only for their sacrifices to allow me to pursue my educational dream, but also for their happy support of me. My deep appreciation extends to my in-laws, Young Ha Kwon and Miuye Yang, for their constant love and trust. Last, but not least,
I owe great debt to my dear wife, Heejung Kwon, for her patience, love, and intellectual and spiritual companionship, and to our son, Jinha, who gives me strength to keep going with his smile.
### VITA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Position/Program</th>
<th>Institution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2007-12</td>
<td>Graduate Research Assistant, Teaching Assistant</td>
<td>Department of Asian Languages and Cultures, University of California, Los Angeles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2007</td>
<td>M. A., Religious Studies</td>
<td>Department of Religion, University of Georgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2005</td>
<td>M. A., Religious Studies</td>
<td>Department of Religion, Sogang University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2003-04</td>
<td>M. Div. (completed 1 year)</td>
<td>Candler School of Theology, Emory University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1996</td>
<td>B. S., Chemistry</td>
<td>Sogang University, South Korea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PRESENTATIONS

Feb. 16\(^\text{th}\), 2013. “The Yangban (Confucian Literati) Attitude toward Buddhism in Late Chosŏn,”

The Harvard-UCLA-SNU Graduate Student Workshop, U.C.L.A., Los Angeles, CA.
INTRODUCTION

1. Negative Image of Buddhism in the Latter Half of Chosŏn

During the latter half of Chosŏn (1392-1910), the last dynasty of Korea, Korean Buddhism is often described as torpid and virtually dead, showing few signs of creativity due to the harsh persecution of the Neo-Confucian state. Such an image is so influential that it continues to hold sway over scholarship on Korean Buddhism. My research challenges this common perception by exploring Buddhism in the late Chosŏn through a case study of the monks Paekp’a Kŭngsŏn 白坡亘璇 (1767-1852) and Ch’oŭi Óisun 草衣恊恂 (1786-1866).

The negative view on Chosŏn Buddhism developed mostly due to the Japanese colonialist perspectives. After colonialization, Japanese Buddhist scholars studied Buddhism in Chosŏn as a means to facilitate the Japanese imperial rule over Korea. They did the extensive bibliographical and historical research on Korean Buddhism, producing such outcomes as the Chōsen jisetsu shiryō 朝鮮寺刹史料 of 1911 and the Chōsen bukkyō kankei shoseki kaidai 朝鮮佛敎關係書籍解題 of 1911. In particular, Hurutani Kiyoshi 古谷靑 for the first time attempted to provide a comprehensive explanation on Chosŏn Buddhism in his “Chōsen Richō bukkyōshi kōgai” 朝鮮李朝佛教史梗槪, published in the journal Bukkyō shigaku 佛教史學 from 1911 to 1912.¹ In this article, Hurutani set the tone for subsequent research on Chosŏn Buddhism. He argued that the anti-Buddhist policy imposed by the Chosŏn court had caused Buddhism to be demoted to the status of a religion for the non-elites of Chosŏn.²

¹ Hurutani’s serial articles “Chōsen Richō Bukkyōshi Kōgai” appear in the Bukkyō Shigaku 1 no. 1 to no. 3 and no.11 to no. 12.

Takahashi Tōru (1878-1967) and Nukariya Kaiten (1867-1934) solidified the negative image on Chosŏn Buddhism. Takahashi characterized Buddhism in Chosŏn as stagnant in his *Richō Bukkyō* 李朝佛教, published in 1929. He argued that “the vitality of Chosŏn Buddhism was extinguished. It did not have any Buddhist vehicles (J. shūjō, K. chongsŭng 宗乘) and thus lost the key Buddhist tenets (J. shūshi, K. chongji 宗旨).”

According to him, the Chosŏn court which was hostile to Buddhism deprived the religion of the socio-political privileges that it had enjoyed in the previous dynasty; and thus, Buddhism could not but rely on women and commoners as its main supporters for its survival. Takahashi went further to say that Chosŏn Buddhism was nothing other than a poor imitation of Chinese Buddhism, without creativity or ingenuity. Nukariya shared Takahashi’s view, characterizing Chosŏn Buddhism as a mere extension of Chinese Buddhism in his *Chōsen zenkyōshi* 朝鮮禪敎史 of 1930. Nukariya asserted that Buddhism had declined during this period without any major developments in terms of Buddhist idea and practice.

The negative image created by Japanese colonial scholars had far-reaching impact. Most of the writings on Chosŏn Buddhism, published even long after the colonial period, described Chosŏn as the period of stagnation or decrease in Buddhism. For example, such contemporary Korean scholars as Kim Yong-jo, Ch’oe Pyŏng-hŏn, Hong Yun-sik, Chŏng

---

3 Takahashi 1929: 893.
4 Chŏng Ho-gyŏng 1992: 405.
5 A few Korean scholars of the colonial period presented counter-arguments. For example, Kim Yŏng-su’s (1884-1967) *Chosŏn pulgyosasago* in 1928 and Ch’oe Nam-sŏn’s “Chosŏn pulgyo: tongbang munhwa sasang e itnûn kǔ chiwi,” *Pulgyo* 74 in 1930 advocated the independent development of Chosŏn Buddhism.
The main arguments of their writings can be summarized as follows: from the very beginning of the dynasty, the ruling yangban (Confucian literati) class of Chosŏn adhered to Neo-Confucianism, rejecting Buddhism. These literati manipulated the Chosŏn court to enforce a strong anti-Buddhist policy. As a result, Buddhism lost all the social, political, and economic privileges and benefits that it had held in the Koryŏ dynasty. By the mid-Chosŏn, Buddhist clerics were deprived of legitimate social status, being treated as members of the lowest class in society. Due to the total severance from the primary source of financial support and philosophical stimulation, Buddhism of this period saw the degeneration of its clerics and the loss of its doctrinal creativity, simply mimicking Chinese Buddhist ideas and concepts. Buddhism of Chosŏn became a religion only for socially marginalized groups.

In the 2000s, several studies sought to challenge such a negative view of Chosŏn Buddhism. Some attempted to erase the torpid image of the religion, emphasizing its active presence during this period. According to them, Buddhism neither declined nor was on the verge of extinction; rather, it penetrated deep into the life of the Chosŏn people with the flourishing of devotional practices such as yŏmbul 念佛 (reciting the Buddha’s name); this period also witnessed the publication of various Buddhist texts such as ritual manuals, temple records, and literary collections of the eminent monks. Others demonstrated some yangban literati’s interest in and acceptance of Buddhism. However, all these writings failed to fully

---


overcome the colonialist image of Chosŏn Buddhism. They still maintained the perception that the majority of the Confucian class ignored and persecuted the religion, lacking the comprehensive research on the literati attitude toward Buddhism of the time. They also could not remove the misperception that Chosŏn Buddhism had merely adopted the Chinese Buddhist thought, unable to present any evidence of the distinctive development of Chosŏn Buddhism.

As seen so far, two main elements constitute the negative view on Buddhism in the latter half of Chosŏn: (a) the ruling literati class’s persecution of Buddhism; (b) the loss of creativity and vitality of Chosŏn Buddhism.

2. Buddhism in Late Chosŏn: the Problems the Buddhist Community Faced

As my research will show, many Confucian literati did not persecute Buddhism, whether or not they were involved in or alienated from the central politics. Rather, they supported the religion both financially and ideologically. Many Confucian literati of this time often made huge donations for the construction or reconstruction of temples and prayer halls, as well as the publication of Buddhist texts. They also argued for the unity of Buddhism and Confucianism themselves, an argument that could not be imagined during the heyday of Neo-Confucian orthodoxy in the sixteenth century. These literati also befriended Buddhist monks, exchanging letters or forming poetry gatherings with them. Some of them showed keen interest in Buddhism and pursued their interest in the religion by reading and discussing Buddhist texts and doctrines. They even suggested the superiority of Kyo (doctrine) to Sŏn (C. Chan, J. Zen), arguing that doctrinal teachings could lead to enlightenment rather than only Sŏn meditation.

Chosŏn Buddhist efforts contributed to such a change in yangban literati’s attitude toward Buddhism. During the two large-scale foreign invasions that occurred in the mid-Chosŏn,
Buddhists demonstrated their loyalty to the court, one of the cardinal Confucian ethics, by participating in the battles themselves and performing Buddhist rituals and ceremonies for the welfare of the court. Chosŏn Buddhists even transformed their doctrines to adjust Buddhism to the Confucian-dominant society of Chosŏn. They argued that practicing loyalty and filial piety could bring about enlightenment, the ultimate Buddhist goal.

Thanks to the favorable attitude of yangban literati, Buddhism in the latter half of Chosŏn enjoyed a modest revival. Most of all, though no doctrinal schools appeared in this period, doctrinal studies became popular in the Chosŏn Buddhist community still dominated by the Sŏn school. A number of Buddhist scriptures and commentaries, especially, regarding Hwaŏm (C. Huayan) philosophy, were published and circulated. Furthermore, such renowned monks as Paegam Sŏngch'ong 柏庵性聰 (1631-1700), Hwansŏng Chian 喚惺志安 (1664-1729), and Yŏndam Yuil 蓮潭有一 (1720-1799) themselves composed commentaries and performed public lectures on Hwaŏm philosophy.

The Korean Sŏn community of this time restored and re-established its practice and lineage. Chosŏn Sŏn monks employed “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation” (C. dunwu jianxiu, K. ton'o chŏmsu) as their major practical or soteriological scheme, a scheme that was first introduced by the Chinese Heze Chan master Guifeng Zongmi 圭峰宗密 (780-841) and Korean Sŏn master Pojo Chinul 普照知訥 (1158-1210). They created a monastic curriculum that substantiated this Heze soteriological system. Many novice monks during the late Chosŏn were trained according to this curriculum. Chosŏn Sŏn monks also restored the Korean Sŏn lineage, which had been interrupted during the first half of the dynasty, by publishing several genealogical texts, including Pulcho wŏllyu 佛祖源流 of 1764. In doing
so, they promoted T’aego Pou 太古普愚 (1301-1382), who had received the Chinese Linji lineage, as the founder of their lineage. In this way, they defined Korean Sŏn tradition as the Imje (C. Linji) lineage.

The Buddhist community in late Chosŏn, as shown so far, faced two different yet linked challenges: (a) How could it embrace the Confucian literati’s intellectual approach to Buddhism?; (b) How should it harmonize the tension between the genealogical (Linji) and soteriological (Heze) identity of Chosŏn Buddhism? These two questions are connected to the issue of the relationship between Chan/ Sŏn and Jiao/ Kyo that had been recurring throughout the history of Sino-Korean Buddhism.

The terms Chan/ Sŏn and Jiao/ Kyo refer to two categories of Buddhist schools in East Asia (Chan/ Sŏn and Jiao/ Kyo scholastic schools) as well as two major Buddhist practices (meditation and doctrinal studies). As Chan/ Sŏn formed an independent Buddhist school in East Asia, it created the tension against the established Jiao/ Kyo school. This polemical tension between the two rival schools also involved the soteriological tension between meditation and doctrinal studies. The Jial/ Kyo school argued that its text revealed the Buddha’s teaching perfectly and fully while the Chan/ Sŏn school maintained that its technique led directly to the Buddha’s enlightenment. Even within the Chan/ Sŏn school, different positions on this issue often appeared, competing for dominance. In particular, the Heze school represented the unity of Chan and Jiao; the Linji school, Chan’s superiority to Jiao. By defining the soteriological and genealogical identity in terms of these two Chinese Chan schools, which held different views on the relationship between Chan/ Sŏn and Jiao/ Kyo, Korean Sŏn Buddhism of the late Chosŏn exhibited an internal inconsistency. Furthermore, the literati’s
apparent favor of Kyo over Sŏn also demanded that the Chosŏn Sŏn community respond by revisiting this age-old issue of the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo.

Considering this circumstance, this dissertation seeks to demonstrate the following two points: (1) many yangban (Confucian literati) provided extensive financial and ideological support for Buddhism and developed an interest in the religion as an alternative or supplement to Confucianism; (b) the two monks Paek’pa and Ch’o’ui developed unique theories on the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo within the socio-religious context of Korea. In particular, Paek’pa responded to the issue of the internal inconsistency of Korean Sŏn Buddhism; Ch’o’ui responded to that of the Confucian literati’s approach to Buddhism.

3. Previous Scholarship on Paek’pa Kŭngsŏn and Ch’o’ui Ùisun

The negative image of Chosŏn Buddhism has affected previous scholarship on Paek’pa and Ch’o’ui. With few exceptions, scholarship on these two figures argues that these two late Chosŏn monks simply appropriated Chinese Buddhist thought without any connection to the social and religious context on Korean soil.

Previous scholarship has mostly focused on Paek’pa and Ch’o’ui ’s Sŏn thought, overlooking their interaction with the yangban literati. The scholarly approach to these two monks began with the Chosŏn pulgyo t’ongsa 朝鮮佛敎通史, written in 1918 by Yi Nŭng-hwa (1869-1943). In this voluminous work, Yi criticized Paek’pa and Ch’o’ui for focusing only on the scholastic interpretations of the terms and concepts borrowed from Chinese Buddhism without exploring their practical validity in Chosŏn society. In the 1920s and 1930s, the Japanese scholars Takahashi Tōru and Nukariya Kaiten were also critical of the two monks’

Buddhist thought. In particular, Nukariya defined the Sŏn writings of these two monks as a doctrinal form of Sŏn, denouncing Paek’’a and Ch’o’ui as making a serious mistake by conceptualizing the pure truth of Sŏn, which Nukariya argued was in its nature ineffable.\(^\text{10}\)

After liberation from Japanese colonial rule in 1945 and the subsequent ecclesiastical turmoil in the 1950s and 1960s, the Sŏn ideas of these two monks attracted the attention of many Korean scholars, some of whom showed consistent interest in them.\(^\text{11}\) Han Ki-du was one such scholar.

In the 1970s, Han published a series of writings on the Sŏn thought of the two monks. In particular, in one of his articles, Han interpreted their thought in connection with the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo. According to Han, Paek’’a emphasized the superiority of Sŏn to Kyo while Ch’o’ui highlighted the equality of the two. However, Han did not connect the Sŏn thought of these two monks to the socio-religious context of Korea of the time. Although several writings on the thought of the two monks appeared in the 1980s, they did not go beyond Han’s arguments. In the 1990s, a few scholars took a more critical approach to the thought of the two monks. For example, Kim Chong-myŏng made the following major criticisms of the Sŏn thought of Paek’’a and Ch’o’ui:\(^\text{12}\) (1) neither of the two Sŏn monks presented a philosophical discussion on the mind, which Kim asserted is a quintessential aspect of Sŏn Buddhism; (2) Paek’’a and Ch’o’ui lacked a critical attitude toward Chan/ Sŏn texts, for they were not aware that some of their basic ideas were in fact based on fabricated theories such as *samch’ŏ chŏnsim* 三處傳心 (three places of mind transmission); (3) both monks violated the

---


fundamental tenet of Sŏn Buddhism by employing conceptual frameworks, which were unsuitable for the ineffable truth of Sŏn;\(^\text{13}\) (4) their thought was completely alienated from the current social situation, not showing any sign of social consciousness;\(^\text{14}\) (5) their Sŏn theories were uncreative and uncritically incorporated concepts from Chinese Buddhism. Overall, Kim defined the Sŏn ideas of Paekp’a and Ch’o’ui as speculative, impractical, and isolated from the social reality in which they lived.

In the 2000s, some scholars attempted to overcome such a negative point of view by locating the thought of the two monks within the context of the Korean Sŏn tradition. Kim Pyŏng-hak argued that their Sŏn teachings were a symbol of the revival of the Korean Buddhist community, which had stagnated due to the government’s anti-Buddhist policies.\(^\text{15}\) Kim emphasized that these monks’ different ideas of Sŏn had raised the issue of where kanhwa 看話 (C. kanhua; observing the key phrase) meditation practice should be located within the Korean scheme of Buddhist practice, though he gave little explanation of this matter.\(^\text{16}\) Ha Mi-gyŏng also agreed that the thought of these two monks had been most concerned with the issue of the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo.\(^\text{17}\)

While most of the research focused exclusively on the Sŏn thought of Paekp’a and Ch’o’ui, some research pointed out that the two monks had interacted with yangban literati.

\(^{13}\) The third criticism is probably most common. To introduce a few articles which criticize the thought of the two monks from this point, Chŏng Pyŏng-sam 1983; Chŏng Han-yŏng 1998: 237-287; Pak Chong-ho 2003: 7-27.

\(^{14}\) Ch’oe Il-bŏm shares this point. For details, see Ch’oe Il-bŏm 1990: 379-380.

\(^{15}\) Kim Pyŏng-hak 2006: 77-102.


\(^{17}\) Ha Mi-gyŏng 2009.
Chŏng Pyŏng-sam listed the names of some yangban literati who had exchanged letters with the two monks, though without any analysis. Yi Hŭi-jae and Cho Yun-ho investigated the relationship between some Confucian literati and the two monks. After explaining the relationship between the Confucian literocrat Kim Chŏng-hŭi 金正喜 (1786-1856) and Ch’oŭï, Yi and Cho argued that only reform Confucianism (K. Sirhak; lit. Practical Learning 實學) scholars had been interested in Buddhism in this period. Kŭm Chang-t’ae also agreed with Yi and Cho’s argument in his article about Kim Chŏng-hŭi.

Overall, previous scholarship has generally been critical of the Sŏn thought of Paekp’a and Ch’oŭï. They described these monks’ Sŏn ideas as too scholastic, overemphasizing Chinese Chan concepts and thus failing to have any religious meaning for contemporary Koreans. Although some scholars attempted to overcome such a negative viewpoint by looking at their thought in the context of the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo, they gave no detailed explanation of this critical issue. In addition, little research was devoted to studying the Sŏn thought of Paekp’a and Ch’oŭï within the broader context of the East Asian Chan/ Sŏn tradition. Some research also shed light on the interaction between the two monks and yangban literati, but typically assumed that such yangban literati were outsiders who were alienated from central politics.

20 Kŭm Chang-t’ae 2008: 96.
21 These scholars just gave a brief history of the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo in Chosŏn Buddhism. However, their summaries of the history even contradict to each other, which can be shown in Ha’s and Han’s articles.
4. Summary of Chapters

My research explores the Buddhist thought of Paekp’a Kŭngsŏn (1767-1852) and Ch’o’ui Üisun (1786-1866) in light of the broader Korean socio-cultural context in late Chosŏn. My study is in five chapters. The first chapter explores various aspects of the intersections between Buddhist monks and Confucian literati in late Chosŏn, including an analysis of these monks’ interactions with yangban literati. The next four chapters examine the significance of the ideas of Paekp’a and Ch’o’ui about the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo, which the two monks presented through their interpretations of the Chinese Chan master Linji Yixuan’s teaching.

Chapter One challenges the Japanese colonialist view of Chosŏn literati’s approach to Buddhism and demonstrates the literati’s interest in Buddhist doctrines by exploring the social and religious background of late Chosŏn, focusing on interactions between Confucian literati and Buddhist monks. Through the reading of monastery records, private literary collections of yangban literati, and epitaphs of eminent monks, I demonstrate that many yangban, regardless of their political and ideological affiliations, showed a favorable attitude toward Buddhism, and that some of them even actively followed their interest in Buddhism. This research breaks down the very foundation of the colonial image of Chosŏn Buddhism by revealing that Buddhism continued to exist and even thrive as a legitimate member of society with active interaction with Confucianism.

Chapter Two provides the background for understanding the attempts of Paekp’a and Ch’o’ui to resolve the issues that Korean Sŏn Buddhism faced in late Chosŏn. In particular, it explores three different positions on the issue of the relationship between Chan/ Sŏn and Jiao/ Kyo, which developed in Sino-Korean Chan and Sŏn history: (1) the unity of Chan and Jiao (C. *chanjiao yizhi* 禪敎一致); (2) a separate transmission outside Jiao (C. *jiaowai biechuan*...
In particular, the third position, which was dominant in late Chosŏn, created a problem in regard to the yangban literati’s approach to Buddhism. This system limited the utility of Kyo in bringing about enlightenment. In this system, Kyo was considered necessary but preparatory, since it was impotent in achieving the final perfect enlightenment on its own; by contrast, Sŏn was the sole means of achieving that ultimate Buddhist goal. This subordinate position of Kyo in Korean Sŏn soteriology inevitably generated tension with the Confucian literati’s scholastic approach to Buddhism in late Chosŏn.

Chapter Three examines the Chinese and Korean Chan and Sŏn interpretations of Linji’s Teaching of “Three Statements, Three Mysteries, and Three Essentials” (C. sanju sanxuan sanyao; K. samgu samhyŏn samyo 三句三玄三要), the teaching that Paekp’a and Ch’oŭi employed to present their different visions of the Sŏn and Kyo relationship through the form of Sŏn taxonomy. This chapter explores various interpretations of Linji’s teaching in terms of the relationship of the Chan/ Sŏn and doctrinal teachings, as well as the influence of those interpretations on Paekp’a and Ch’oŭi’s taxonomies. It focuses on the discussions of Chinese masters Fenyang Shanzhao 汾陽善昭 (947-1024), Jianfu Chenggu 賢福承古 (970-1045), and Juefan Huihong 覺範惠洪 (1071-1128) and the Korean masters Pojo Chinul 普照知訥 (1158-1210) and Chinjŏng Ch’ŏnch’aek 真靜天頌 (fl.13th century).

Chapter Four investigates Paekp’a’s three-fold taxonomy of Sŏn, which sought to resolve the tension within the Korean Sŏn tradition in relation to its different genealogical and soteriological associations. Paekp’a represented the traditional Korean Sŏn view of the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo, in which the doctrinal studies were considered a preparatory step for Sŏn training. He attempted to justify this view by correlating the Korean Sŏn and Sino-
Korean Imje (C. Linji) traditions. In doing so, Paekp’a employed Linji’s teaching as a juncture between the two different traditions. Based on the teaching, he laid out a three-fold taxonomy of Sŏn. In this taxonomy, Paekp’a unified the Korean Sŏn and Imje traditions soteriologically by placing the Heze scheme of practice into the Imje tradition; he also promoted the Imje school, with which the Korean Sŏn tradition claimed to be affiliated genealogically, as the supreme Sŏn school.

Chapter Five examines Ch’o’ui’s claim of the ultimate identity between Sŏn and Kyo to embrace the yangban literati’s scholastic approach to Buddhism. Ch’o’ui’s view on these two main elements of East Asian Buddhism is revealed in his criticism of Paekp’a. Ch’o’ui criticized Paekp’a’s polemical approach to Sŏn Buddhism, in particular, his promotion of the Linji lineage by arguing that Linji’s teaching, in fact, represented the unity of all types of Sŏn. Then, Ch’o’ui introduced new definitions of Sŏn and doctrinal teachings, which endorsed Confucianism as well as the literati approach to Buddhism. His new definitions not only removed the distinction between the two strands of Buddhism but also drew connections between Buddhism and Confucianism. Ch’o’ui argued that Sŏn and doctrinal teachings were not fundamentally different from each other because they originated from the same source, the Buddha Śākyamuni. For Ch’o’ui, there is no hierarchy between Sŏn and doctrinal teachings. Although he did not present a systematic soteriology, Ch’o’ui showed to the literati class his willingness to adapt Buddhism to the Confucian society of Chosŏn.

Overall, I believe that my research presents a more accurate and comprehensive picture of Korean Buddhism in late Chosŏn. This research undermines the colonial image of Korean Buddhism by revealing various levels on which Buddhism and Confucianism interacted in late Chosŏn. It also demonstrates the distinctive development of Korean Sŏn Buddhism by
presenting Paekp’a and Ch’oůi’s new perspective on the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo, which responded to the social and religious context of late Chosŏn.
CHAPTER ONE. Yangban and Buddhism in the Second Half of Chosŏn Dynasty

The colonial image of Buddhism in late Chosŏn (1392-1910) ascribes a main cause of the decrease in the religion to the yangban attitude toward Buddhism. The ruling literati class of the time adhered to Neo-Confucianism, rejecting and persecuting “heterodox” ideologies such as Buddhism; consequently, Korean Buddhism was demoted to a minority religion, losing its creativity and vitality. Recently, some scholars have challenged this perception by demonstrating that some of the yangban held a favorable view of Buddhism. These scholars mostly credit this “change” of some yangban literati’s attitude toward Buddhism to the intellectual situation during this period. According to them, the latter half of Chosŏn witnessed an intellectual openness and diversity that had been rare since the beginning of the dynasty. Some literati criticized the Cheng-Zhu orthodoxy for being too scholastic and narrow to properly respond to the contemporaneous issues of Chosŏn society, and sought for alternative ideologies. The scholars argue that such an environment allowed some yangban Confucians to examine Buddhism, which had long been branded as heterodoxy. In this line of argument, these scholars assume that the yangban literati who showed interest in Buddhism were in fact outsiders alienated from central politics such as reform Confucianism (K. Sirhak; lit. Practical Learning) and Yangming (K. Yangmyŏng 阳明) learning scholars. They also assume that the majority of the yangban still held onto Cheng-Zhu learning and were critical of all heretical teachings, whether old (Buddhism) or new (Yangming learning and Catholicism).22

---

Though there was a certain critical attitude toward the dominant Cheng-Zhu ideology among some yangban literati, such an argument in fact distorts the reality of the yangban literati’s attitude as a whole toward Buddhism, and subsequently the actual social status of the religion during the latter half of Chosŏn. In this chapter, I will attempt to draw a more accurate picture of Buddhism in the latter half of Chosŏn society by exploring the following questions: if certain Confucian literati supported Buddhism, who were they? Were they outsiders who had little opportunity to be engaged in court politics? Were they central bureaucrats who were influential in the socio-political arena? Or were they both? How did they approach Buddhism? By addressing these questions, I will demonstrate that many yangban literati—not just political outsiders but also high ranking bureaucrats—showed a favorable attitude toward Buddhism regardless of the intellectual milieu of the time and personal political or ideological positions. I will also show that even though Buddhism was still branded as a heterodox during the latter half of Chosŏn, it in fact flourished through active interaction with Confucianism.

1. Yangban Attitude toward Buddhism

1) The factionalization of the yangban class.

Let us first look at the political and social features of the yangban class in relation to the intellectual milieu of the second half of the Chosŏn dynasty before discussing the yangban attitude toward Buddhism. The Chosŏn Yangban literati were not a homogenous social group. They were in fact diverse politically, economically, and even religiously or ideologically. In particular, in the latter half of the dynasty, the yangban were divided into a few groups. The accessibility to higher governmental posts and economic benefits, as well as different political and philosophical ideologies, catalyzed such divisions.
According to Ch’a Chang-sŏp, those who passed the civil service examination and were eligible for higher governmental positions were concentrated in a few powerful clans during the Chosŏn dynasty. From the sixteenth to the early twentieth centuries, almost half of the successful examinees in the higher civil service exams came from no more than thirty clans, approximately four percent of the clans that produced such a personage. Most of these powerful clans lived in or near the capital, dominated the higher bureaucratic positions, and offered royal consorts to the court. They also entered into marriage relationships with each other to maintain their privileges and distinguish themselves from other yangban clans.23

These powerful clans were further divided into a few factions, based on their political and ideological stances. In the sixteenth century, when factionalism first appeared, a person of one faction could change his loyalty from one to another, based on his personal values or opinions, and communicate with a member of a different faction, including having marriage or master-disciple relationships. However, in the seventeenth and eighteenth century, in particular, during King Sukchong’s reign (r.1674-1720), the factional strife grew so intense that when one faction seized power, that faction purged its opponents. As the interpretation of Cheng-Zhu ideology became an issue in court politics, factionalism led not just to political, but also philosophical and ideological strife, in which clan members inherited and transmitted their ancestors’ stance from one generation to another. Since the reign of King Injo (r. 1623-1649), the factionalization led to the three major factions of Noron 老論 (Old Doctrine), Soron 少論 (Young Doctrine), and Namin 南人 (Southerner), struggling for power in the political arena of the Chosŏn court.24


24 Kuksa p’yŏnch’an wiwŏnhoe, Han’guksa vol. 32: 19-31.
The two Chosŏn kings of the eighteenth century tried to resolve this often-bloody power struggle within the ruling yangban class. King Yŏngjo (r. 1724-1776), after his ascension to the throne, attempted to stabilize the politics and strengthen royal authority by adopting the Grand Harmony Policy (K. t’angp’yŏng ch’aek 藕平策) that King Sukchong had proposed. The t’angp’yŏng policy aimed at bringing factional balance to central politics and keeping any specific faction from monopolizing power. Despite Yŏngjo’s effort, however, the Noron faction became the final victor after centuries of factional strife, due to the Soron and Namin extremists’ failed coup attempt, as well as the king’s affiliation with the Noron faction.25 His grandson, King Chŏngjo (r. 1776-1800), continued the t’angp’yŏng policy. As one of the critical measures for this policy, Chŏngjo, in spite of the oppositions of the dominant Noron faction, appointed several Namin literati, who had been alienated from politics since the reign of King Sukchong, to high governmental positions. Chŏngjo’s t’angp’yŏng policy was somewhat successful in that severe factionalism simmered down without any major bloodshed or coups, which had plagued his predecessors’ courts, during the whole twenty-five years of his reign. In 1788, Chŏngjo even had the three chief councilors, the highest bureaucratic positions, appointed from all three different factions and serving at the same time. However, the balance of power among the factions was fragile, because the yangban population far outnumbered the political and economic resources available at the time, and the hostility among the factions, accumulated through the long history of purges, was too deep to suppress. The tension among the yangban factions continued throughout the king’s reign beneath the surface of the seemingly successful

---

25 For the detailed political situations of King Yŏngjo’s reign, see Haboush 1988.
The yangban community of the latter half of Chosŏn was severely divided.

2) Emergence of alternative ideologies

This same period saw the emergence of new intellectual movements, such as Yangming learning, Catholicism, and reform Confucianism. However, these ideologies were allowed only to the extent that they would not threat the orthodox position of Cheng-Zhu learning. The influence of these new ideologies, therefore, was limited.

Yangming learning, which enjoyed popularity in China, was introduced to Korea around 1521. This new type of Neo-Confucianism, however, ended up occupying just the periphery of the yangban intellectual community and failed to form a meaningful ideological stream until the end of the dynasty. This is mainly due to the Korean Cheng-Zhu scholars’ harsh criticism from the very moment of its introduction. In particular, Yi Hwang 李滉 (1501-1570) in 1556 defined Yangming learning as a heterodox teaching that would disrupt orthodox Cheng-Zhu learning. This branding by an authoritative figure of the Chosŏn Cheng-Zhu school determined the fate of Yangming learning throughout the latter half of Chosŏn. Yi, most of all, dubbed it as a Confucian counterpart of Sŏn Buddhism because of its emphasis on mind. He went on to say that Yangming followers were more dangerous than Sŏn monks because they disguised themselves as Confucians. Despite such harsh criticism, however, a small number of literati,

---

26 Yu Pong-hak 2005: 3-8.
27 Kim Yong-jae presents a list of the Chosŏn yangban literati, who composed the writings criticizing the Yangming learning. Kim Yong-jae 2012: 110.
such as Chang Yu 張維 (1587-1638), Ch’oe Myŏng-gil 崔鳴吉 (1586-1647), and Chŏng Che-du 鄭齊斗 (1649-1736) showed interest in Yangming learning. In particular, Chŏng devoted himself to the study of Yangming learning as an alternative ideology for Cheng-Zhu orthodoxy. After Chŏng moved to Kanghwa Island, off the western coast of the peninsula near the capital, his descendants and students such as Yi Kwang-sa 李匡師 (1705-1777) and Yi Kwang-myŏng 李匡明 (1701-1778) continued to study Yangming Learning. Although few members of this so-called “Kanghwa school” were politically purged during the dynasty, Yangming learning failed to become the majority doctrine of the yangban.29

A reform Confucian movement, which modern scholarship sometimes designates as “Sirhak” (Practical Learning 實學), culminated in Chŏngjo’s reign.30 This new Confucian movement intended to respond to various social, political, and economical issues that Chosŏn society of that time faced. Several reformist Confucian scholars, such as Yu Hyŏng-wŏn 柳馨遠 (1622-1673), Yi Ik 李潁 (1681-1763), Chŏng Yag-yong 丁若鏞 (1762-1836), and Hong Tae-yong 洪大容 (1731-1783), criticized the unproductive and speculative discourses as well as the ideological rigidity of Cheng-Zhu scholar officials. They also presented their reform ideas in philosophical, political, social, and economic areas, which could be categorized in the following four main areas: (a) new interpretations of the Confucian classics; (b) administrative reforms regarding governmental organization and land system; (c) technological reforms for the development of industry and commerce; (d) development in the humanities and the sciences,


30 The definition and the scope of sirhak are still controversial issues: See, Cho Sŏng-san 2011 and Yu Pong-hak 2011.
such as history, epigraphy, linguistics, and geography. These reformist Confucians all had different personal and social backgrounds. Even though some of them arose to high governmental positions, however, their reformist ideas never formed the mainstream to the extent that they would actually challenge the Cheng-Zhu based social order. Some reformist Confucians even eagerly defended the orthodoxy of Cheng-Zhu learning.

Among the four main areas of reform Confucianism, technical reforms require a little more attention. This movement was centered around a small number of yangban literati in the capital, later labeled the “School of Northern Learning” (K. pukhak p’a 北學派). It largely consisted of Noron literati who had visited Qing China. Impressed by the economic and socio-cultural development of Qing, such literati as Hong Tae-yong and Pak Chi-wŏn 朴趾源 (1737-1805) urged that Chosŏn should learn from Qing, and criticized the claim that Chosŏn was the center of civilization. What is important in this movement regarding the intellectual milieu of the time is that its promotion of Qing material culture contributed to the circulation of a number of late Ming and early Qing Chinese texts in eighteenth-century Korea. These texts, including such literary works as fictions and essays as well as Confucian commentarial works of the evidentiary approach (K. kojŭnghak 考證學), attracted many yangban literati in and near the capital. This triggered King Chŏngjo’s campaign in support of orthodox Cheng-Zhu learning as will be examined below. Catholicism was also first imported to Korea around this time. Chosŏn yangban literati encountered this religion through several Catholic texts, written in or

33 Setton 1997: 16.
34 Kuksa p’yŏnch’an wiwŏnhoe, Han’guksa 32: 35-40.
translated into classical Chinese, such as the *Ch’ŏnju sirŭi* 天主實義 (*C. Tianzhu shiyi*) and the *Ch’ilgŭk 七克* (*C. Qike*). In the early period of its introduction, several yangban literati were interested in Catholicism, treating it as a scholarly subject and called it “Western Learning” (*K. sŏhak 西學*). Some young literati who belonged to the Namin faction even formed regular meetings to study these texts. Although most of the yangban who were drawn to Catholicism confined their interests to scholarly matters, some developed full-fledged religious devotion. However, the social and political implications of the Catholic teachings were alarming enough for the majority of the ruling class to suspect that they would threaten Confucian social ethics. Eventually, King Chŏngjo issued an edict in 1785, banning the circulation of Catholic texts.

There occurred an incident which Western learning of Catholicism substantiated yangban suspicions. The Namin affiliated Yun Chi-ch’ung 尹持忠 (Paul Yun 1759-1791) and his cousin Kwŏn Sang-yŏn 權尙然 (Jacob Kwŏn 1751-1791), both of whom had converted to Catholicism, challenged the Confucian social order, based on their religious faith. In 1791, following the decision of the Catholic Church in Rome, they did not make a memorial tablet for Yun’s deceased mother, and even burned all of their ancestors’ tablets in Chinsan, Chŏlla province. Since the memorial tablets played the major role in the Confucian mourning ritual, they were closely related to filial piety, one of the cardinal Confucian ethics. Hence, Yun and Kwŏn’s deeds shocked Chosŏn Confucians. The court had them executed and burned all Catholic texts in the royal library. This Chinsan accident, most of all, brought about serious

---

36 *Chŏngjo sillok*: Apr. 9th of the 9th year: http://sillok.history.go.kr
anti-Christian sentiment among the yangban. Many Catholic yangban literati abandoned their faith, leaving Catholicism as a minority religion of the lower class of Chosŏn.\(^{38}\)

Shortly after the Chinsan incident, Chŏngjo started a campaign that confirmed the orthodox position of Cheng-Zhu learning within the yangban intellectual community. This campaign, which modern scholars call “munch’e panjŏng” 文體反正 (Restoring the right literary style), reflected the intellectual milieu of Chosŏn society of this time. In November of 1791, just a few months after Chinsan incident the king issued a following edict.

> As for this [Catholic] matter, it is difficult to fully control with punishments. In dispelling heterodoxy, no other method is better than illuminating “orthodox learning” [i.e., Cheng-Zhu learning]. Therefore, when I asked a question for a recent policy essay question, I spoke at length on [the harms of] late-Ming and early-Qing literary collections.\(^{39}\)

Then, Chŏngjo took actions to remove the influence of the late-Ming and early-Qing literary collections on the Chosŏn literati and to assure the orthodox position of Cheng-Zhu learning. For example, the king forbade the royal Confucian academy student Yi Ok 李鈺 (1773-1820) to take the civil service exam until Yi corrected his informal literary style. The king also ordered Pak Chi-wŏn, a renowned Northern learning scholar of Noron, to write an essay of self-reproach and banned the circulation of his Yŏrha ilgi 熱河日記.\(^{40}\)

As Kang Myŏng-gwan points out, Munch’e panjŏng was basically an attempt to censor new ideologies beneath the surface of these new literary styles, demonstrating the

\(^{38}\) Kuksa p’yŏnch’an wiwŏnhoe, Han’guksa 35: 102-105.

\(^{39}\) Chŏngjo sillok 33: Nov. 7 of the fifteenth year. http://sillok.history.go.kr

\(^{40}\) For details of munch’e panjŏng, see Pak Hye-jin 2006.
conservativeness of Chosŏn society.\textsuperscript{41} The campaign mostly targeted Chinese fictions and essays since, Chŏngjo believed, the literary works that contained heterodox thought were threatening Cheng-Zhu orthodoxy. Although there was virtually no one who was severely punished for the informal literary style, even such minor punishments such as writing a letter of self-reproach Chŏngjo imposed on the involved literati were enough to send a warning sign to the Chosŏn intellectual society.\textsuperscript{42} This campaign, consequently, stifled the possibility of the spread and development of alternative ideologies, which had been already marginalized. The new intellectual movements, critical of Cheng-Zhu orthodoxy, such as Yangming learning, Catholicism, and reform Confucianism, were almost completely shut out of the intellectual discourse of the Yangban community in the subsequent century. \textit{Munch’e panjŏng} confirmed and reinforced the peripheral status of alternative ideologies within Chosŏn society.

The Chosŏn ruling class never allowed any alternative thought to go beyond or threaten the social paradigm defined by Cheng-Zhu ideology. New ideologies were allowed just for a very short period of time. Even in that case, they were limited mostly to a small number of political outsiders. If they attempted to go beyond that limitation, various sanctions were

\textsuperscript{41} Some recent scholars argue that this rather small-scale campaign of \textit{munch’e panjŏng} in fact was aimed at the dominant Noron faction as Chongjo’s countermeasure to rescue the Namin faction from its political predicament. Such scholars as Yu Pong-hak and Pak Hyŏn-mo argue that after the Chinsan incident, the Noron asked for the wholesale persecution of Catholics, because the faction wanted to politically utilize some Namin Yangban’s involvement in Catholicism as an excuse to purge the whole Namin faction from central politics. According to these scholars, Chŏngjo, therefore, initiated \textit{munch’e panjŏng} to protect the Namin literati he politically supported by warning the Noron faction, many of which were allegedly involved in this new Chinese literary style (see, Yu Pong-hak 1998: 150-151 and Pak Hyŏn-mo 2001). However, this interpretation leans too much toward court politics. Most of all, just as the huge difference in the severity of the punishments to these two heterodoxies showed, the ruling class regarded Catholicism as a much more serious threat to the Chosŏn Confucian social order than the late-Ming and early-Qing literary collections. Considering this fact, it is doubtful that \textit{munch’e panjŏng} could actually have served as such a strong measure to make the Noron faction, which, according to this interpretation, should be highly motivated to get rid of its rival, fear the king’s counterattack against their faction.

\textsuperscript{42} Kang Myŏng-gwan 2001: 120-142.
imposed to contain them within those boundaries. The yangban society of the latter half of Chosŏn was, to say the least, not so open to or tolerant of new ideologies.

3) Yangban attitude toward Buddhism

As recent scholarship shows, it is true that a small group of the literati, who explored alternative ideologies, showed some interest in Buddhism. However, such interest was also shared by other literati as well. In fact, many yangban intellectuals held a favorable attitude toward Buddhism regardless of the conservative milieu of the time and their personal political or ideological orientations. Even some major literati were supportive, or at least not so critical, of Buddhism, even in the period when factional strife grew more turbulent over the intense debate concerning the issue of the orthodox interpretation of Cheng-Zhu learning. In the following section, I will offer a few examples of such cases.

One of the controversial issues in factional strife in the seventeenth century was the enshrinement of Yi I 李珥 (1536-1584). Yi’s mother died when he was sixteen. After three years of mourning for his mother, Yi went to Mt. Kŭmgang at nineteen, infatuated with Buddhism. According to Yi’s autobiographical record, after a year of devotion to Buddhism, he realized that Buddhism was not a proper way of pursuing the truth and returned to Confucian studies. Later, however, Song Si-yŏl 宋時烈 (1607-1689), who defended Yi in the enshrinement controversy, implied that Yi had been interested in Buddhism years before the death of his mother. After returning to Confucianism, Yi passed the higher civil service exam at twenty nine and rose to some high posts. His theory of Cheng-Zhu philosophy became one

---

43 For example, see Yu Ho-sŏn 2007; Yi Chong-ju 2005; and Ku Sa-hoe 1997.
44 Sukchong sillok 16, Sep. 30 of the eleventh year.
of the main-stream interpretations. He also became a leader of the Sŏin faction, the antecedent of the Noron and Soron factions.45

Since the issue of enshrining Yi was first raised in 1635, it had become the subject of controversy between Yi’s Sŏin faction and its major factional opponent, the Namin.46 The decades of debate between these two factions finally ended with the enshrinement of Yi in 1682. The main debate was about whether such figures as Yi, who had been involved deeply in Buddhism, deserved the honor of enshrinement. The Namin were opposed to enshrining Yi, allegedly criticizing that Yi had had his hair shaved, wore a Buddhist robe, and even had a Buddhist name. The Sŏin, on the other hand, pushed for Yi’s enshrinement, placing little importance on Yi’s involvement with Buddhism. What is interesting in the debates is the Sŏin’s rationale in defending Yi, which can be summarized as follows: since Yi had significant knowledge and understanding of Buddhist doctrines through his study of Buddhist texts, he realized the falsity of Buddhism and eventually returned to Confucianism. Although Sŏn is heterodox, its theories of mind were so sophisticated that even such talented Confucian students as Yi I fell for Buddhism. Zhang Hengqu 張橫渠 (1020-1077) and Cheng Mingdao 程明道 (1032-1085) were the same as Yi. Even Zhu Xi 朱熹 (1130-1200), the Chinese cofounder of the Cheng-Zhu school, studied Chan Buddhism for ten years. All these scholars became great scholars of Confucianism after coming back from Buddhism. Therefore, students only have to study what these scholars achieved after they returned to Confucian orthodoxy.47

45 For the life of Yi I, see Hwang 2000.
46 For details of this controversy, see Pak Pyŏng-sŏn 2002: 107-121.
47 May 31st of the 13th year of King Injo. Injo sillok vol. 31.
Here, the Sŏin were not so critical of “falling for” Buddhism, though they still considered Buddhism as a heterodox teaching. According to them, since it is almost natural for an ardent Confucian student to become temporarily enamoured of Buddhism, those who have a brief devotion to Buddhism should not be excluded from being honored as a Confucian sage. This view is surprising because it was the Sŏin that justified Yi’s involvement with Buddhism: the Sŏin literati and their political descendants were supposedly fervent defenders of orthodox Cheng-Zhu learning throughout the latter half of the Chosŏn dynasty. Moreover, they lobbied for some Namin literati who advocated different interpretations of the Cheng-Zhu theory to be sent into exile or put to death, charging that they were “enemies of the Confucian way” (K. samun nanjŏk 斯文亂賊). The Sŏin may have defended Yi simply because he had been a leader of the faction. Whatever their intention, one major faction legitimized the pursuit of a heterodox teaching in the period when Confucians were keen on the issue of heterodoxy to establish orthodox Cheng-Zhu learning.

The Sŏin did not just acquiesce to a Confucian’s involvement with Buddhism; they also provided financial support for Buddhism. In the Record of Kŭmsan Monastery, located in Kimje, Chŏlla province, the Chief Councilor Kim Su-hang 金壽恒 (1629-1689), the Left Councilor Nam Ku-man 南九萬 (1629-1711), and other high-ranking officials during the reign

---

48 Such Namin literocrats as Hŏ Mok 許穆 (1595-1682) and Yun Hyu 尹鑑 (1617-1680) were branded as samun nanjŏk and politically disadvantaged or purged. Of course, the factional strife between the Namin and the Sŏin was one of the chief reasons for their ill-fate. However, indicative to the intellectual milieu of the time was the fact that their different opinions on the Confucian classics served as an excuse for their punishment. For Yun Hyu’s new interpretation and the branding of samun nanjŏk, see Yi Sang-hun 2005.

49 It is also unclear whether the Namin of this period were really opposed to Buddhism. Their strong opposition to enshrining Yi might have been a tactic to further a political initiative over the Sŏin.
of Sukchong (r. 1674-1720) are recorded as great donors. Kim was a leader of the Noron faction, while Nam was the patriarch of the Soron faction of this time. Most of the scholar-officials who donated to the monastery were either Noron or Soron, which were sub-factions of the Sŏin. As mentioned earlier, during Sukchong’s reign, the factional strife was supposedly most severe, often resulting in the execution of the leaders of the opponent faction when a change of a regime occurred (hwan’guk 换局). During this turbulent time, the leaders of major factions made donations to a Buddhist monastery, the institutional basis for an age-old heretical teaching. Their massive donations, however, brought few criticisms from their major political opponent, the Namin faction.

There is another case indicating that the intellectual and cultural milieu had little to do with yangban attitudes toward Buddhism. In the early nineteenth century, while the influence of the late King Chŏngjo’s (r. 1776-1800) campaign of Munch’e panjŏng was still in effect, Chosŏn society became strikingly conservative: it did not tolerate any new ideas and practices that might threaten the authority of Cheng-Zhu learning. During this period, the conservative Noron, the dominant faction at the Chosŏn court of the time, initiated its first large-scale persecution of Catholicism. Namin scholar-officials who had any involvement with Catholicism were expelled from central politics or sent into exile. Reform Confucianism and Yangming Learning scholars were also excluded from politics during this period of turmoil. Any chances to pursue an official career were closed for these yangban aristocrats. During this wholesale purge in Chosŏn yangban society, there was no sign of any parallel movement against

50 Han’gukhak munhŏn yŏn’guso 1983: 223.
51 There were three major hwan’guk in the reign of Sukchong: kyŏngsin (1680), kisa (1689), kapsul (1694).
Buddhism. Rather, the leading political figures of this time financially supported Buddhism. Besides, despite their support of Buddhism, these yangban aristocrats received no criticism from their political opponents. One such yangban literatus is Kim Hŭi-sun 金羲淳 (1757-1821), a high-ranking Noron official and member of the powerful Andong Kim consort clan. According to the reconstruction record of Sudo monastery in Taegu, Kyŏngsang province, Kim led a reconstruction project for the monastery during the reign of Sunjo (r. 1800-1834).

Few scholar-officials in late Chosŏn could save their positions or even their lives if they were branded as heretics or enemies of the Confucian way, regardless of their governmental positions or the prestige of their clans. It would have been de facto career suicide to support any heretical teaching, especially during such a dangerous time when ideological censorship was strictly enforced. However, in both cases mentioned above, no one was removed from his governmental position or put to death because of his support of Buddhism. In fact, such cases hardly occurred throughout the latter half of Chosŏn.

This fact reveals that Buddhism of this time occupied a rather unique position. Though Buddhism had been officially branded as a heretical teaching since early in the dynasty, it was different from other heretical teachings, such as Yangming learning and Catholicism. As Yi Hwang’s criticism of Yangming learning shows, Buddhism did not confuse Korean people by disguising itself as a true teaching the way Yangming Learning did: neither did it challenge the Confucian moral codes as did Catholicism. In other words, Buddhism recognized its socio-political limitations and became fully assimilated to such Confucian ethics as loyalty and filial piety as will be discussed later in this chapter. As a result, Buddhism received little antipathy

---

from many yangban literati. It rather attracted many literati with its philosophical sophistication.

Even some yangban literati, including high-ranking bureaucrats, affirmed the harmony of Buddhism and Confucianism, just as several monks had claimed during the early and the middle periods of the dynasty, when anti-Buddhist policies were seriously enforced.

Ch’ě Che-gong 蔡濟恭 (1720-1799), a chief-council in the reign of Chŏngjo (r. 1776-1800), expressed the harmony of the two religions when he wrote a preface for a monk’s private literary collection: “The ways of Buddhism and Confucianism are in concert. Why are we worried that Buddhism is a heterodoxy? Why are we concerned that its words are rejuvenated by the day and spread by the month?” (儒與佛道 通于一 何憂乎異端 何患乎其說之日新月盛乎).53

Ch’ě was a patriarch of the Namin, a faction that we saw earlier had been strongly opposed to the Sŏin idea of enshrining Yi I because of Yi’s history of involvement with Buddhism less than a hundred years prior. Kim Cho-sun 金祖淳 (1765-1831), a Noron official as well as patriarch of the Andong Kim consort clan, also showed a favorable attitude toward Buddhism, saying that the Buddhist way of training the mind was not different from the Confucian way. Kim Chwa-gún 金左根 (1797-1869), who became a leader of the clan following his father Kim Cho-sun, described the unity of the two religions in the following poem: “When I meet a foreign monk, I remember I saw his face before. In the evening when I hear a gāthā [of enlightenment] sung with a clear voice, I see a mountain shrouded in soundless clouds. The words of Buddhism are originally those of Confucianism” (邂逅胡僧舊識顔 夜聞淸偈靜雲山 佛家原是儒家說).54

---


54 Hasil yugyo 3: cited in Ibid., 327.
A number of records from this time show that such a favorable attitude toward Buddhism was not limited to some “eccentric” yangban literati. According to such texts as monastery records and private literary collections of yangban literati or monks, many yangban, regardless of their bureaucratic positions, often made huge donations to monasteries and temples to help build prayer halls or rebuild main Buddha halls. They also wrote monastery records or epitaphs for eminent monks. From the late seventeenth century onward, there are several records indicating that many yangban had close relationships with Buddhist monks, as will be shown in the following section. They had frequent contacts or exchanges of the letters with monks. This practice continued until the early nineteenth century when Chosŏn society grew more conservative, leaving little room for such new ideologies as Catholicism and Yangming learning.

4) Yangban approach to Buddhism

Some of the Yangban pursued their interest in Buddhism by reading Buddhist texts and studying its doctrines. This scholastic approach to the religion, most of all, was related to the yangban identity as literati. The yangban were extensive readers. For example, Hong Sŏk-chu 洪奭周 (1774-1842) in his Hongssi Toksórok 洪氏讀書錄 introduced about 16,000 books with short reviews. Most of the books Hong read himself. Many yangban literati also wrote about reading, the fundamental activity to their identity. For example, in his Kyŏngmong yogyŏl 擊夢要訣, a guideline for the Confucian life read by many literati after him, Yi I said:

55 For details of the Chosŏn yangban literati’s donation to the Buddhist monasteries and temples, see Pak Pyŏng-sŏn 2002: 14-75.

56 For a brief explanation of Hong’s list, see Yi Sang-yong 2006: 8-11 and Chin Chae-gyo 2007: 146-148.
“When you read, you should neatly put your hands together and sit up straight. You should have respectful mind and exert yourself for reading. You should read with wholesome thought to deeply understand the meaning of the text” (凡讀書者 必端拱危坐 敬對方冊 專心致志 精思涵泳 深解義趣). Chŏng Yag-yong also advised that a student should reflect on the meanings of a hundred books that he had read when he read a book, and thus he should be able to penetrate its meaning. Considering this attitude toward reading, it is not so surprising to see that the yangban literati who attained knowledge and understanding of Buddhism from reading Buddhist texts could become so convinced of their own insight that they looked down on the monks’ understanding of the doctrines and even admonished the monks to follow their advice.

One example is Yi Ok. As mentioned before, Yi was forbidden by King Chŏngjo from taking the civil service exam because of the literary style he adopted when he was a student at the royal academy. Yi’s personal literary collection reports a dialogue he had with a monk when he stayed at the monastery of Songgwangsa 松廣寺. Their dialogue is reported in a question-answer form. While he read the Yuanjue jing 圓覺經 (K. Wŏn’gak kyŏng), Yi happened to discuss Hwaŏm (C. Huayan) theories with a monk in the monastery who had already been ordained for about twenty years. What is surprising in their dialogue is that Yi appears to have taken the role of a master who checks his student’s level of understanding. Yi asked a question regarding Hwaŏm theory and the monk answered. Yi asked another question,
and the monk answered again. After an exchange of a few questions and answers, the monk finally thanked Yi for his great teachings, shedding tears of gratitude. We have no knowledge of the identity of this monk. He may have been practicing *kanhwa* Sŏn for a good amount of time in his career as a monk, since Songgwangsa—where the dialogue occurred—had been the center of the *kanhwa* Sŏn technique since the Koryŏ monk Chinul (1158-1210) introduced it. The monk also may have taken the role of a student intentionally just to please a yangban who was ranked in a higher social class. Whether the monk’s expression of gratitude for Yi was authentic or not, what draws our attention is that Yi, whose only practice related to Buddhism was probably reading Buddhist texts, appears to have believed that he knew Buddhism better than the monk who began his cleric career some twenty years prior, and assumed the role of a master without hesitation.

Chŏng Yag-yong (1762-1836) is another example. In particular, he criticized the *kanhwa* Sŏn technique, preferring a more literati-like approach to Buddhism. Chŏng was a Namin politician, as well as Confucian theorist during Chŏngjo’s reign. Shortly after King Sunjo’s (r. 1800-1834) ascension to the throne, he was sent into exile during a period of persecution of Catholicism because of his previous involvement with that heterodox religion. While he was exiled, Chŏng communicated with many monks and taught the Confucian classics to them. In particular, Chŏng was close to a monk named Aam Hyejang 兒庵惠藏 (1772-1811). Chŏng and Aam exchanged letters with each other. In one of his verses to Chŏng, Aam wrote, “Who gained dynamism [in practice] through the investigation of the cypress tree *kongan*? He would only hear of the name of the Lotus world!” (柏樹工夫誰得力
About a year later, Aam died. Chŏng said in his eulogy for Aam, “Can you really see for yourself whether the monk Zhaozhou, after contemplating on the kongan ‘a dog has no Buddha-nature’ for all his life, has gone to rebirth in the Lotus world or not? Surely, Aam has already found it out!” (能親見趙州和尚 一生念狗子無佛性
真已往生在蓮花世界否...兒菴既知之矣).

Here, Chŏng seems to share a view on the practice of kongan investigation with Aam. To determine whether he was critical of the practice, it is necessary to see what kind of a monk Aam was in Chŏng’s eyes. In his letter to his brother Chŏng Yak-chŏn 丁若銓 (1758-1816), Chŏng mentioned Aam. According to the letter, Aam was such a great Hwaŏm teacher that he attracted more than a hundred students by his age of twenty seven. Aam enjoyed reading the Analects and the Mengzi. In particular, he was interested in the Book of Changes and thus asked Chŏng to teach the book. According to another of Chŏng’s eulogies for Aam, other monks called him by the title of “sŏnsaeng” (teacher先生), not Sŏn master. This is probably because “Aam acted like a Confucian literatus, even though he had a monk’s name” (墨名儒行) as explained in Chŏng’s letter to his brother. It seems that Chŏng viewed Aam as more of a scholar-monk than a Sŏn master. A biography of Aam in his epitaph, Aam changgong t’apmyŏng 兒菴藏公塔銘, confirms this supposition: there

---

60 Chŏng Yag-yong, “Sang Chungssi sinmi tong” Tasan simun chip vol. 20.
http://db.itkc.or.kr/index.jsp?bizName=MK&url=/itkcdb/text/nodeViewIframe.jsp?bizName=MK&seojiId =kc_mk_c001&gunchaId=av020&muncheld=01&finId=024&NodeId=&setid=48642&Pos=4&TotalCount=8&searchUrl=ok

61 Chŏng Yag-yong, “Che Aam Hyejang mun” Tasan simun chip vol. 17.
http://db.itkc.or.kr/index.jsp?bizName=MK&url=/itkcdb/text/nodeViewIframe.jsp?bizName=MK&seojiId =kc_mk_c001&gunchaId=av017&muncheld=04&finId=022&NodeId=&setid=48642&Pos=3&TotalCount=8&searchUrl=ok

was no record or any implication that Aam practiced kanhwa Sŏn practice.\textsuperscript{63} Therefore, in his eulogy, Chŏng probably implied that his close acquaintance Aam, who had been so devoted to the study of Confucian and Buddhist scriptures, should be in the Lotus world, the world of enlightened beings, while Zhaozhou 趙州 (778-897), a symbol of kongan investigation, should not be there. The implication in the verse is that Chŏng questioned the efficacy of the kanhwa Sŏn technique in attaining the Buddhist goal. Chŏng’s critical attitude to the technique is also seen in his letter to another monk named Kŭnhak 勤學 (fl. 19\textsuperscript{th} century). There, Chŏng advised the monk to abandon the technique.\textsuperscript{64}

Another example is Kim Chŏng-hŭi, who was a high ranking official and renowned Confucian scholar in the early nineteenth century. He was deeply interested in Buddhism. Kim enjoyed reading Buddhist texts and sharing such pleasure with other literati. He sent a copy of the \textit{Vimalakīrtinirdeśa} (C. \textit{Weimo jing}, K. \textit{Yuma kyŏng} 維摩經) to his friend Kwŏn Ton-in 權敦仁 (1783-1859), who was a chief-councilor. In his letter to Kwŏn, Kim also praised the literary style of the \textit{Vimalakīrtinirdeśa} and the \textit{Śūraṃgama-sūtra} (C. \textit{Lengyan jing}, K. \textit{Nŭngŏm kyŏng} 恒嚴經).\textsuperscript{65} In a letter to another literatus, Kim even gave philosophical comments on some Buddhist texts, quoting from various Buddhist writings, including Chan/ Sŏn

\footnotesize

\textsuperscript{63} “Aam changgong t’apmyŏng,” \textit{Aam chip}.

\textsuperscript{64} Chŏng Yag-yong, “wi samun Kŭnhak Chŏngŏn,” \textit{Tasan simun chip} vol. 17. http://db.itkc.or.kr/index.jsp?bizName=MK&url=ltkdb/text/nodeViewIframe.jsp?bizName=MK&seojId =kc_mk_c001&gunchaid=av017&munchclid=10&finId=052&NodeId=&setid=68750&Pos=7&TotalCount=49&searchUrl=ok

\textsuperscript{65} Kim Chŏng-hi, “sŏdok 21,” \textit{Wandang Chŏnjip} 3. http://db.itkc.or.kr/index.jsp?bizName=MK&url=ltkdb/text/nodeViewIframe.jsp?bizName=MK&seojId =kc_mk_h011&gunchaid=av003&munchclid=01&finId=021&NodeId=&setid=261495&Pos=37&TotalCount=55&searchUrl=ok
literature. He was close to several monks, exchanging letters with them. He even debated with the monk Paek’ap’a on some issues of Sŏn as will be explained in chapter five. Here, I just would like to mention that Kim was critical of kanhwa Sŏn meditation. Kim pointed out that the technique began in Song China and had no direct relation to the Buddha Śākyamuni. He, then, expressed his serious doubts about the efficacy of kanhwa Sŏn, and asserted that a practitioner should abandon the technique in order to attain Buddhist truth.

A favorable atmosphere for Buddhism existed in late Chosŏn yangban community. Many yangban literati were huge donors to several large scale reconstruction projects of monasteries and had close tie with Buddhist monks. Some even pursued their interest in Buddhism by reading various Buddhist texts and gained extensive knowledge of Buddhist theories and practices. This atmosphere toward Buddhism in the yangban community led to the revival of Buddhism in interaction with Confucianism in the latter half of Chosŏn.

2. Development of Buddhism in Late Chosŏn

1) Buddhist accommodation to Confucian ethics.

Buddhism, which had been criticized by Confucians since the beginning of the dynasty for its apparent lack of political loyalty and filial piety, changed the yangban attitude toward the religion by accommodating itself to Confucian ethics during the latter half of Chosŏn. One primary example is its active participation in opposing the two foreign invasions by the Japanese and the Manchurian, in which the Buddhist monks formed a militia to defend the state. During

---

66 For details of Kim Chŏng-hŭi’s interest in Buddhism, see Kŭm 2008.

67 Kim Chŏng-hi, “Yŏ Paekp’a 1,” Minjok munhwa ch’ujin hoe 1988: 155; for the original text in literary Chinese, see ibid., 57b04-06.
the Japanese invasions (1592-1598), the first massive foreign invasions of the Chosŏn dynasty, Hyujŏng lineage monks led the monk military movement. Hyujŏng himself organized monk’s militias with his disciples such as, Ŭiŏm 義嚴 (fl. 16th century), Yujŏng 惟政 (1544-1610), and Ch’ŏyŏng 處英 (fl. 16th century) in Hwanghae, Kangwŏn, and Chŏlla provinces. Yujŏng, in particular, contributed to recapturing P’yŏngyang, and even went to Japan as an emissary of King Sŏnjo (r. 1567-1608) to negotiate the release of Korean hostages after the invasions.68 Other Hyujŏng lineage monks such as Ch’ŏngmae Ino 靑梅印悟 (1548-1623), Kiam Pŏpkyŏn 奇巖法堅 (1552-1634), and Chunggwan Haean 中觀海眼 (b. 1567) also led the monk’s militia and participated in the battle themselves. During the two Manchu invasions in 1627 and 1636, the monk’s militia also participated in the battles. Hŏbaek Myŏngjo 虛白明照 (1593-1661) led the militia to participate in defending Anju, Pyŏngan province in the first invasion, and took charge in logistics in the second. Pyŏgam Kaksŏng 碧巖覺性 (1575-1660) also organized the militia in the southern part of the peninsula during the second invasion.69

After the first large-scale foreign invasions, the Chosŏn court decided to utilize the labor power of the monks for the practical needs of state defense. The forts in Tongnae (present Pusan) and Kanghwa Island, two important military posts, and the royal palace were built or rebuilt in the seventeenth century mostly with the labor of Buddhist monks. The monks were also mobilized to build the Namhan mountain fort in 1626 and the Pukhan mountain fort in 1711. The monk’s militia was stationed within these two forts for the defense of the capital.70

69 U Chŏng-sang 1959: 577-595.
court established a system to command the monk’s militia within the two forts and control the monks throughout the country.\footnote{For details of the origin and application of this system, see Yŏn-ŭng 1987: 51-85.}

The Buddhist contribution to state defense was appreciated by the court. The leaders of the monk’s militia were granted governmental positions and posthumous honors for their valor during the invasions.\footnote{Kang Hyŏng-gwang 2010: 60-62.} In particular, Hyujŏng and Yujŏng, two of the most famous monk militia leaders, were enshrined in the three temples with official rituals, first at P’yoch’ungsā 表忠寺 at Miryang, Kyŏngsang province in 1738, next at Taehŭnga 大興寺 at Haenam, Chŏlla province in 1788, and finally at Pohyŏnsa 普賢寺 at Yŏngbyŏn, P’yŏngan province in 1794.\footnote{Chang Tong-p’yo 2000: 148.} Besides, many monks who served on the governmental construction projects were granted legitimate social status as a monk by being awarded monk-certificates.\footnote{The regulation for a monk-certificate in the Kyŏngguk taejŏn was abolished in the reign of Chungjong in 1516. It was temporarily revived in 1550 and abolished again in 1566 during the reign of Myŏngjong. For details, see Hwang In-gyu 2004: 291-298.}

In addition to these direct activities for state defense, Chosŏn Buddhists arduously adjusted the religion to Confucian social ethics, such as loyalty and filial piety. They held several ceremonies and rituals to pray for the welfare of the royal family and for state protection, as well as for the salvation of the dead during the foreign invasions.\footnote{The writings of the renowned monks of the time such as Kiam Pŏpkyŏn 奇巖法堅 (1552-1634), Wŏlchŏ Toan 月渚道安 (1638-1715), Sŏram Ch’ubung 雪巖秋鵬 (1651-1706), and Wŏrha Kyeo 月荷戒悟 (1773-1849) record the prayers for these rituals. For details, see Nam Hŭi-suk 2004: 97-112.} Many monks even compromised some Buddhist doctrines to the Confucian ethics of the ruling class. For example, Muyong Suyŏn 無用秀演 (1651-1719) asserted that one would be reborn with a golden body in
the highest place of Pure Land if he sought the Pure Land by practicing loyalty to the court and filial piety to their parents. Yongdam Chogwan (1700-1763) also emphasized the importance of filial piety, arguing that one could not achieve the Buddhist Way without practicing filial piety.

Buddhist promotion of Confucian ethics, along with its contributions to state defense, not just earned the religion legitimate status in Confucian society, but also encouraged a favorable attitude of the ruling class as a whole toward Buddhism. There was an incident during the reign of King Hyŏnjong (r. 1659-1674), which reflected the changed social and political status of Buddhism during this period. Hyŏnjong, the eighteenth king of the dynasty, solely took anti-Buddhist measures during the latter half of Chosŏn. Shortly after assuming the throne, in 1660, the king banned commoners from becoming Buddhist clerics and closed the two Buddhist nunneries Insuwŏn 仁壽院 and Chasuwŏn 慈壽院 in the capital. He adopted even stronger anti-Buddhist measures in 1663, confiscating the land and slaves of many monasteries throughout the country. In reaction to the king’s anti-Buddhist policy, Paekkok Ch’ŏnŭng 白谷處能 (1617-1680) submitted a memorial to the throne, which was called “Kanp’yesŏkkyoso” 諫廢釋敎疏. What is interesting in Paekkok’s rather lengthy memorial is that he took a few examples of Chinese emperors who promoted or persecuted Buddhism, and pointed out that pro-Buddhist emperors were later praised as sage rulers while the anti-Buddhist ones suffered ignominious fates. Although this memorial rhetorically attributed Hyŏnjong’s

76 “Kich’oe chŏngŏn sŏ,” Muyongdang chip 2: HPC 9, 351c02-04; re-quoted from Kuksa p’yŏnch’an wiwŏn hoe 1998, Han’guksa 35: 143.
77 Chŭngsamdut’aji kwi, Yongdam chip: HPC 9, 683a21; re-quoted from Kim Yong-t’ae 2008: 48.
anti-Buddhist measures to disloyal vassals, it was almost a direct attack or even a threat to the throne.\footnote{For the details of the memorial, see Kim Ki-yŏng 2003: 183-222; the memorial was submitted in 1661 (Kim Sun-sŏk 2002: 82).} During the Chosŏn dynasty, such memorials often led a submitter, regardless of his background, to lose his governmental position, be sent into exile, or even put to death. However, Paekkok did not face such fates. Instead, he was appointed the commander \textit{(toch'ongsŏp 都摠攝)} of the Namhan Mountain fort in 1674.\footnote{Nam Hüi-su 2006: 24-25.} Although it is not sure if he was influenced by Paekkok’s memorial, Hyŏnjong did not continue with his anti-Buddhist measures. The king even reconstructed the monastery of Pongguksa 奉國寺 and had the monks perform the funerary ritual for his two deceased princesses in 1674.\footnote{O Kyŏng-hu 2007: 349-350.}

Buddhism firmly established itself as a legitimate member in Chosŏn society through its efforts to embrace Confucian ethics. Although the religion was still branded as heterodox, it was hardly persecuted. Buddhism during the latter half of Chosŏn rather enjoyed the support of the royal family and the prominent yangban families. Through such a renewed position in the society, Buddhism was able to engage actively with Confucianism.

2) Life of renowned Buddhist monks: the cases of Paekp’a Kŭngsŏn and Ch’oŭi Ŭisun

Many Buddhist monks and yangban literati had close relationships throughout the latter half of Chosŏn. They exchanged letters and poems, and often formed poetry societies, meeting at scenic sites, temples, or yangbans’ mansions. Even high-ranking bureaucrats or renowned Noron scholars were members of those societies. As examples of the yangban-monk

\begin{thebibliography}
\item 79 For the details of the memorial, see Kim Ki-yŏng 2003: 183-222; the memorial was submitted in 1661 (Kim Sun-sŏk 2002: 82).
\item 80 Nam Hüi-su 2006: 24-25.
\item 81 O Kyŏng-hu 2007: 349-350.
\end{thebibliography}
interactions, here I explore the life of Paek’a Kūngsŏn 白坡亘璇 (1767-1852) and Ch’oŭi Ŭisun 祗衣意恂 (1786-1866). These two Buddhist monks lived in the conservative society of the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries, during which the voice of wijŏng ch’ŏksa (protecting the [Cheng-zhu] orthodoxy and rejecting the evil [teachings] 衛正斥邪) became larger.

Paek’a Kūngsŏn was born to a local yangban family in Koch’ang, Chŏlla province. He was an eleventh generation descendent of King Sŏnjo’s father Tŏkhŭng taewŏn’gun 德興大院君 (1530-1559). In 1783 when he was seventeen, Paek’a went to Sŏnuusa 禪雲寺, a monastery near his hometown, to study for civil service exam at his father’s advice. He became a novice monk the next year, believing that following Buddhism would be a greater practice of filial piety. In 1790, he received full ordination from Sŏlp’a Sangŏn 雪坡尚彦 (1707-1791), a fifth-generation master succeeding P’yŏnyang Ōngi 鞭羊彦機 (1581-1644), one of Hyujŏng’s disciples, and studied Hwaŏm philosophy. Paek’a gave his first public doctrinal lecture in 1792 and continued his lecture activities for the next twenty-three years. In 1815, he began to practice Sŏn meditation, while wandering around the country. In 1822, he formed the Society of Cultivating Sŏn practice at Paegyangsa 白羊寺, Chŏlla province. In 1830, he moved to Sunch’ang in the same province and established the Society of Cultivating Sŏn and Kyo. In 1840, Paek’a returned to Paegyangsa to stay for the rest of his life. He wrote several

---

82 Paek’a’s biography is recorded in the Sorim t’ongbang chŏngan 少林通方正眼, compiled by Ponggi奉琪 (1824-1889), one of his students (HPC 10, 651c15-653a15) and the Tongsya yŏlchŏn 4 by Pŏmhae Kagan 楞海覺岸 (1820-1894) (HPC 10, 1033b15-1034a05). For modern scholarship of his biography, see Yu Sun-back 2005: 16-24 and Kim Pyŏng-hak 2008: 18-24.
writings such as the *Sŏnmun sugyŏng* 禪文手鏡, the *Susŏn kyŏlsamun* 修禪結社文, and the *Sŏnmun yŏmsongjip sagi* 門拈頌集私記.

Paekp’a had a close tie with several renowned yangban literati such as Hong Kyŏng-mo 洪敬謨 (1774-1851), Kim Cho-sun, Kim Chwa-gŭn, and Ki Chŏng-jin 奇正鎭 (1798-1879). Kim Cho-sun, as mentioned before, was the patriarch of the Andong Kim consort clan that dominated the late Chosŏn court politics. Kim composed the preface to Paekp’a’s *Susŏn kyŏlsamun*, showing his familiarity with Sŏn Buddhist literature. His son Kim Chwa-gŭn made donations to carve the woodblocks of the *Susŏn kyŏlsamun* at the request of one of Paekp’a’s disciples.83 Ki Chŏng-jin, who represented the movement of *wijŏng ch’ŏksa*, wrote the *Hwajangdae sorimgul sŏn’gyo kyŏlsahoe ki* 華藏臺少林窟禪敎結社會記, a record of Paekp’a’s Society of Sŏn and Kyo at Sunch’ang, Chŏlla province.84 Besides these literati, Paekp’a also exchanged the letters with Kim Chŏng-hi. In 1843, Kim sent letters to Paekp’a, which criticized the *Sŏnmun sugyŏng*, and wrote the epitaph for Paekp’a after his death in 1852.

Ch’oŭi Ûisun was born in Muan, Chŏlla province.85 Little is known of his family except the fact that his secular surname was Chang 張. He was tonsured at Unhŭngsa 雲興寺, Naju of the same province in 1800. After having a spiritual breakthrough in 1804, Ch’oŭi went to Taehŭngsa 大興寺, Haenam, Chŏlla province, to receive a full ordination from Wanho Yunu (1758-1826), a seventh generation master succeeding Ŭn’gi. For the next few years, staying at

---

83 *Susŏn kyŏlsa mun*, HPC 10, 548b03-05.

84 *Sorim tongban chŏngan* HPC 10, 626b17-627a4

85 The *Tongsa yŏlchŏn* 4 (HPC 10, 1039a15-b12) and Sin Hŏn’s 申穎 (1810-1888) *Ch’oŭi taejongsa t’appimyŏng* 草依大宗師塔碑銘 (HPC 10, 869b05-870b01) record Ch’oŭi’s biography; for modern scholarship of his biography, see Kim Pyŏng-hak 2008: 58-65 and Lee Young Ho 2002: 34-81.
Taehŭngsa, he studied Buddhist scriptures as well as Siddham scripts and Korean traditional Buddhist painting t’anghwŏ 布畫. In 1809, he met the renowned Namin literocrat Chŏng Yag-yŏng, who was in exile in Kangjin, and studied the Confucian classics from Chŏng. In 1824, Ch’o’ŏi built a hermitage named “Ilchiam” 一枝庵 near Taehŭngsa, and resided there for the rest of his life. He often travelled around the country, seeing many yangban and monk acquaintances. He even went to Cheju Island, southwest of Chŏlla province, to see Kim Chŏng-hi, who lived there in exile from 1840 to 1848, and stayed on the island with Kim for about six months.86 Ch’o’ŏi was famous among fellow monks and yangban literati for his knowledge of tea, even writing in 1837 the Tongda song 東茶頌, the verses in praise of Korean Tea, at the request of King Chŏngjo’s son-in-law Hong Hyŏn-ju 洪顯周 (1793-1865).87 Ch’o’ŏi composed several works such as the Sŏnmun sabyŏn manŏ 禪門四辨漫語, the Ch’o’ŏi sŏn’gwŏ 草衣禪課, and the Tasin chŏn 茶神典.

Ch’o’ŏi had extensive relationships with the yangban literati, exchanging letters and verses with them and having frequent poetry-meetings. Among these literati were central bureaucrats such as Kwŏn Ton-in 權敦仁 (1783-1859) and Hong Sŏk-chu, as well as local magistrates such as Sin T’ae-hŭi 申泰熙 (fl. 19th century) and Yi Wŏn-ju 李源祚 (1792-1872). Hong Hyŏn-ju and Chŏng Yag-yŏng’s son Chŏng Hag-yŏn 丁學淵 (1783-1859) also participated in some of Ch’o’ŏi’s poetry meetings, along with other literati.88 Many of these

86 Lee Young Ho 2002: 44.
87 Kowŏl Yongun 2010: 11.
88 Ch’o’ŏi’s literary collection records a number of letters and verses that he exchanged with the yangban literati.
literati were versed at Buddhist literature, having their own insights into Buddhism. For example, Sin Wi 中緯 (1769-1845), a renowned literocrat, discussed the origin of April Eighth in the lunar calendar as Śākyamuni’s birthdate, and identified the act of composing verses with the practice of cultivating Sŏn in his letters to Ch’o’ūi.  

As the lives of these two masters show, Buddhist monks and yangban literati had close relationships, regardless of the social milieu of the time and yangbans’ personal political or ideological positions. Through these relationships, Buddhism received not only financial but also ideological support from Confucians. These active interactions between the two religions allowed Buddhism to thrive in the latter half of Chosŏn.

3) Development of Buddhism
(1) Doctrinal lectures.

The latter half of Chosŏn witnessed the revival of doctrinal studies, which lost its vitality in the first half of the dynasty because of the court’s anti-Buddhist policies. In the earlier period of Chosŏn, the Kyo school, which was built around the capital and the major cities of Korea, took serious blows from the surging Neo-Confucian attack against Buddhism. Although some monks still identified themselves as Kyo-affiliated, as shown in Hyujŏng’s Sŏn’ga kwigam 禪家龜鑑, there were few known Kyo monks as doctrinal studies decreased.

---

89 Yi Chong-ch’an 2010: 203 and 232
90 Kuksa py’ŏnch’an wiwŏnhoe
91 Yujŏng’s postface for the Sŏn’ga kwigam indicated the presence of Kyo monks of this time. HWP 7, 646a16-19.
The Kyo-related activities revived again in the latter half of Chosŏn with the heightened social status of Buddhism. In particular, the doctrinal lectures on Hwaŏm philosophy were booming. The descendents of Hyujŏng and his dharma brother Puhyu Sŏnsu 浮休善修 (1543-1615) led this trend. Hyujŏng lineage monks such as P’ungdam Ŭisim 楓潭義諶 (1592-1665), Sangbong Chŏngwŏn 霜峯淨源 (1627-1709), Wŏlchŏ Toan 月渚道安 (1638-1715), Hwansŏng Chian 喚醒志安 (1664-1729), and Sŏram Ch’ubung 雪巖秋鵬 (1651-1706) all became famous for their Hwaŏm lectures. The lineage’s next generation masters such as Sangwŏl Saebong 霜月璽封 (1687-1767), Sŏlp’a Sangŏn 雪坡尙彦 (1707-1791), Yŏndam Yuil 蓮潭有一 (1720-1799), and Inak Úich’ŏm 仁嶽義沾 (1746-1796) held several large-scale lecture meetings. In particular, Sangwŏl Saebong and Hwansŏng Chian held meetings in which more than 1,000 Buddhists attended to listen to their doctrinal lectures. Yŏndam Yuil even traveled around the country, giving lectures for more than thirty years. He also composed the Hwaŏm sagi 華嚴私記, a brief compendium of Qingliang Chengguan’s 清涼澄觀 (738-839) Dafangguang fo huayan jing shou yanyi chao 大方廣佛華嚴經隨疏演義鈔 (hereafter Yanyi chao), and debated with Mugam Ch’oenul 默庵最訥 (1717-1790) on the issue of the mind-nature. Puhyu’s descendents, such as Paegam Sŏngch’ong 柏庵性聰 (1631-1700), Hoeam Chŏnghye 晦庵定慧 (1685-1741), and Mugam Ch’oenul, were also famous as great lecturers on Buddhist doctrine. Hoeam Chŏnghye lectured on the Hwaŏm Sūtra several times

---

93 Kim Ch’ang-suk 1999: 79-81
94 Yŏndam argued that the Buddha and sentient beings have the same mind while Mugam argued that Buddha’s mind is different from that of sentient beings. For details, see Kim Yong-t’ae 2009: 421-428.
and composed the **Hwaŏmgyŏng so ŭngwa** 華嚴經疏隱科, an introduction to Chengguan’s **Yanyi chao**. Paegam Sŏngeh’ong published hundreds of Buddhist texts regarding Sŏn and Hwaŏm. He also held a large-scale meeting to discuss Hwaŏm philosophy in 1692.⁹⁵ With the emergence of these great lecturers and frequent lecture meetings, Chosŏn Buddhists’ interest in doctrine was rejuvenated in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries.

As Kim Yong-t’ae points out, this booming of doctrinal lectures had an impact even on dharma transmission. The Chosŏn monks of the time came to divide their lineages in terms of Sŏn and Kyo. For example, Hwaak Chit’ak’s 華嵐知濯 (1750-1839) literary collection **Sambong chip** 三峰集 records the names of Hwaak’s disciples according to these two strands: disciples who received Sŏn (susŏn 受禪) and Kyo (subŏp 受法). Hwadam Kyŏnghwa’s 華潭敬和 (1786-1848) biographical record also follows this practice. T’aehŏ Nambung 太虛南鵬 (fl. 18th century) even argued that Yujŏng’s lineage was Kyo while Ŭn’gi’s was Sŏn.⁹⁶ According to Kim, Nambung’s statement reflects the popularity of Kyo studies during the latter half of Chosŏn, enhancing Kyo to the same level as Sŏn by labeling the lineage of Hyujŏng’s successor Yujŏng as a Kyo line, even though there was no historical basis for this placement.⁹⁷

(2) Publication of monks’ literary collections

Another trend in Buddhism during the latter half of Chosŏn was the increase in publication of monks’ literary collections. Monks of the time produced many writings: they

---

⁹⁵ Kim Yong-t’ae 2008: 159-161

⁹⁶ **Sambong chip** 三峯集, HPC 10, 481a23-b08 and 485a04-11; T’ongdosa sŏlsongdang taesa pimyŏng 通度寺雪松堂大師碑銘, *Han’guk kosŭng pimun ch’ongjip* 258-259: cited from Kim Yong-t’ae 2008: 143-144.

⁹⁷ Yujŏng not only studied Buddhist doctrines but also received Sŏn training from Hyujŏng.
composed theoretical treatises and commentaries and exchanged letters and poems with the yangban literati. These writings were collected and published by their disciples.

Consequently, the literary collections of the monks, hardly found in the first half of the dynasty, drastically increased especially in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. There were a few extant literary collections of such monks as Hŏbaek Myŏngjo 広白明照 (1593-1661), Paekkok Ch’ŏnmŭng 白谷處能 (1619-1680), and Paegam Sŏngch’ong 栢庵性聰 (1631-1700) in the seventeenth century; and about forty extant collections in the eighteenth century (See Chart 1).

Many of the writings recorded in these collections are poems, which were mostly composed in communication with the literati, confirming the increased interaction between Confucian literati and Buddhist monks of this time.99

Table 1. Monks’ literary collections in the eighteenth century100

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monk</th>
<th>Collection title</th>
<th># of poem</th>
<th># of others</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wŏlchŏ Toan 月渚道安 1638-1715</td>
<td><em>Wŏlchŏdang taesajip</em> 月渚堂大師集</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P’unggye Myŏngch’al 模溪明察 1640-1708</td>
<td><em>P’unggneyip</em> 模溪集</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sŏksil Myŏngan 石室明眼 1646-1710</td>
<td><em>Paegu sup’il</em> 百愚隨筆</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sŏram Ch’ubung 雪巖秋鵬 1651-1706</td>
<td><em>Sŏram chapchŏ</em> 雪巖雜著</td>
<td>806</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Sŏram nan’go</em> 雪巖論語</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muyong Suyŏn 無用秀演 1651-1719</td>
<td><em>Muyongdang yugo</em> 無用堂遺稿</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hwansŏng Chian 喚惺志安 1664-1729</td>
<td><em>Hwansŏng sijip</em> 喚惺詩集</td>
<td>144</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


100 Chŏng Pyŏng-sam 2007: 96-98.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Years</th>
<th>Works</th>
<th>Pages</th>
<th>Copy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mugiŏng Chasu 無竟子秀</td>
<td>1664-173</td>
<td>Mugiŏngjip 無竟集</td>
<td>219</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mugiŏngsilchung ŏrok 無竟室中語錄</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yŏnghae Yakt’an 影海若坦</td>
<td>1668-1754</td>
<td>Yŏnghaedaesa sijip’o 影海大師詩集抄</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hŏjong Pŏpchŏng 虛靜法宗</td>
<td>1670-1733</td>
<td>Hŏjongjip 虛靜集</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namak T’aeu 南岳泰宇</td>
<td>d. 1732</td>
<td>Namakchip 南岳集</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Songgye Nasik 松桂懶湜</td>
<td>1684-1765</td>
<td>Songgye taešonsa munjip 松桂大禪師文集</td>
<td>163</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sangwŏl Saebong 霜月墨笏</td>
<td>1687-1767</td>
<td>Sangwŏl taesja sijip 霜月大師詩集</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamwŏl Haewŏn 滷月海源</td>
<td>1691-1770</td>
<td>Ch’ŏn’gyŏngjip 天鏡集</td>
<td>217</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wŏlp’a T’aeul 月波允律</td>
<td>b. 1695</td>
<td>Wŏlp’ajip 月波集</td>
<td>164</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yongdam Chogwan 龍潭慥冠</td>
<td>1700-1762</td>
<td>Yongdamjip 龍潭集</td>
<td>199</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hoŭn Yugi 好隱有璣</td>
<td>1707-1785</td>
<td>Hoŭnjip 好隱集</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sŏltam Chau 雪潭自優</td>
<td>1709-1770</td>
<td>Sŏltamjip 雪潭集</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yaun Sisŏng 野雲時聖</td>
<td>1710-1776</td>
<td>Yaun taexŏnsa munjip 野雲大禪師文集</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oam Ümin 鰲岩毅旻</td>
<td>1710-1792</td>
<td>Oamjip 鰲岩集</td>
<td>272</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yongam Ch’ejo 龍巖體照</td>
<td>1717-1779</td>
<td>Yongamdang yugo 龍巖堂遺稿</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taewŏn 大圓</td>
<td>b. 1714</td>
<td>Taewŏnjip 大圓集</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mugam Ch’oenul 黙庵最訥</td>
<td>1717-1790</td>
<td>Mugamjip 黙庵集</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ch’up’a Hongyu 秋波泓宥</td>
<td>1718-1774</td>
<td>Ch’up’ajip 秋波集</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ch’up’a sugan 秋波手柬</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yŏndam Yuil 蓮潭有一</td>
<td>1720-1799</td>
<td>Imharok 林下錄</td>
<td>305</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinhŏ P’ałgwan 振虛捌關</td>
<td>d. cir. 1769</td>
<td>Chinhŏjip 振虛集</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wŏlsŏng Piŭn 月城費隱</td>
<td>d. 1778</td>
<td>Wŏlsŏngjip 月城集</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(3) Establishment of the Sŏn orthodox lineage

Sŏn Buddhism in the latter half of Chosŏn restored its lineage. The Chosŏn Sŏn lineage was interrupted during the reigns of the Yŏnsan’gun (r. 1494-1506) and King Chungjong (r. 1506-1544), when the court’s anti-Buddhist measures were most severe. There was no historical record showing any Sŏn transmission during this time. Even Hyujŏng, who revived the Korean Buddhist tradition, did not recount his entire lineage. He just mentioned the dharma ancestors two generations prior to him (Pyŏksong Chiŏm and Puyong Yŏnggwan in descending order).

After the Japanese invasions of the 1590s, a complete lineage of the Korean Sŏn tradition was first presented. The renowned literatus Hŏ Kyun 許筠 (1569-1618), who was close to Yujŏng, composed the preface to his Ch’ŏnghŏdang chip 清虛堂集 as well as epitaphs for Yujŏng in 1612 at the request of Yujŏng’s disciples. Hŏ recorded the complete Sŏn lineages

101 Sŏn Buddhist restoration of its lineage was probably influenced by the Neo-Confucian idea of “tot’ong” (transmission of the orthodox way 道統), popular around this time.

102 With regard to his dharma lineage, Hyujŏng wrote the Samno haengjŏk 三老行蹟 in which he records the biographies of Pyŏksong and Puyong. See HPC 7, 752b07-755c21.
of Hyujŏng and his disciple Yujŏng for the first time in these two writings, though the lineages he presented were different from each other as follows:

In the preface to the *Ch’ŏnghŏdang chip*:

Yongming Yanshou 永明延壽 (904-976) → Tobong Yongso 道峰靈炤 (d. 974) → Tojang

Sinbŏm 道藏神範 → Ch’ŏngnyang Toguk 清涼道國 → Yongmun Ch’ŏnūn 能門天隱 →

P’yŏnsgan Sungsin 平山崇信 → Myohyang Hoehae 妙香懷瀣 → Hyŏn’gam Kakcho

Yongmun Ch’ŏnūn 龍門天隱 →

P’yŏngsan Sungsin 保山崇信 → Pojo Naong 普濟懶翁 (1320-1376) → Nambong

Tobong Yŏngso 道峰靈炤 →

Sunŭng 南峰修能 → Tŭnggye Chŏngsim 登階正心 → Pyŏksong Chiŏm 碧松智嚴

(1464-1534) → Puyong Yonggwan 美蓉靈觀 (1485-1571) → Ch’ohŏ Hyujŏng 清虛休靜

(1520-1604). 103

In the epitaph for Samyŏng:

Pojo Chinul – Poje Naong – Puyong Yonggwan → Ch’ohŏ Hyujŏng → Samyŏng

Yujŏng. 104

Hŏ’s lineage charts lack any historical grounding. In particular, among the Korean Sŏn masters listed before Tŭnggye Chŏngsim in these lineage charts, only the three Sŏn masters Tobong Yŏngso, Pojo Chinul, and Naong Hyegŭn are proven to be historical figures. No records verify the historicity of the other Sŏn masters. 105 Furthermore, according to the first chart, Hyujŏng’s lineage should belong to the Fayan (K. Pŏban) school. However, Hyujŏng himself regarded his lineage as the Linji (K. Imje) lineage. 106

103 *Ch’ohŏdang chipsŏ* HPC 7, 659c19-660a11.

104 *Samyŏng songun taesa sŏkehang pimyŏng* HPC 8, 75b11-17.


106 *Samno haengjŏk*, HPC 752c02-753a06.
In reaction to such porous lineage charts, P’yŏnyang On’gi suggested a new lineage, which established T’aego Pou as the founder of the Korean Sŏn lineage. P’yŏnyang recorded his master’s lineage in *Pongnaesan unsuam chongbongyŏngdang ki* 蓬萊山雲水庵鍾峰影堂記 of 1625 as follows:

The master T’aego of our East [Korea] went to Mt. Xiawu in China and received the Dharma from Shiwu. He [T’aego] transmitted it to Hwanam. Hwanam transmitted it to So’on. So’on transmitted it to Chŏngsim. Chŏngsim transmitted it to Pyŏksong. Pyŏksong transmitted it to Puyong. Puyong transmitted it to Tŭnggye [Hyujŏng]. Tŭnggye transmitted it to Chongbong [Yujŏng].

P’yŏnyang presented this Sŏn line because he intended to define his lineage as the Linji tradition just as his master Hyujŏng had proclaimed. However, P’yŏnyang’s lineage chart has the same problem as Hŏ’s. There is no historical evidence supporting this lineage. Despite the historical problems, this so-called “T’aego lineage” was established as orthodox by Hyujŏng’s disciples in the seventeenth century.108

The T’aego lineage theory, however, has another serious problem, in particular, regarding the Korean Sŏn tradition as a whole: it simply rejects the Korean Sŏn tradition that developed before the time of T’aego. This theory, as mentioned above, connected Chosŏn Sŏn directly to the Chinese Linji (K. Imje) lineage through T’aego Pou, who had received Dharma transmission from Shiwu Qinggong 石屋清珙 (1272-1352), a Yuan Chinese Linji master. As this theory represented the orthodox line, such monks as Pojo Chinul lost their place in the Korean Sŏn lineage. For example, the eighteenth century Sŏn master Saam Ch’aeyŏng 獅巖采永 (fl. 18th

---

107 *P’yŏnyangdang chip* 2 HPC 8, 253c08-12; cited in Kim Sang-hyŏn 1998:748-749.

century), in his *Pulcho wollyu* 佛祖源流 of 1764, the first comprehensive lineage text in Chosŏn, promoted T’aego as the first patriarch of the Korean orthodox Sŏn lineage, and Hyujŏng as the sixth generation of that lineage.\(^{109}\) Saam, then, designated all Korean Sŏn masters before T’aego Pou, including Chinul, as “scattered sages” (*sansong* 散聖) at the end of the text.\(^{110}\) The Puhyu lineage master Sŏngch’ong, who praised Chinul’s contribution to the Korean Sŏn tradition, also excluded Chinul from the Korean Sŏn lineage in his *Songgwangsa sawŏn sajŏk pi* 松廣寺嗣院事蹟碑 as follows:

Shiwu Qinggong became the eighteenth succession from Linji. T’aego Pou of the Koryŏ dynasty received transmission from Shiwu. Puhyu became the sixth from T’aego. This is the true eye of the Tathāgata. This is not a transmission from Mogu [Chinul].\(^{111}\)

The Chosŏn Sŏn Buddhists of this time restored their lineage by establishing this T’aego lineage as orthodox. With this lineage claim, Chosŏn Sŏn Buddhism genealogically defined itself as the Linji tradition.

### 3. Concluding Remarks

The colonialist view on Buddhism in the latter half of Chosŏn hinges on the premise that Chosŏn Buddhism was completely stopped from all interactions with the ruling literati class. According to this view, the Chosŏn court of the time continued its anti-Buddhist policies,

\(^{109}\) Sŏyŏk Chunghwa haedong pulcho wŏllu 西域中華海東佛祖源流, HPC 10, 101c13-104b08.

\(^{110}\) HPC 10, 129a01-131a08.

initiated at the beginning of the dynasty, and persecuted Buddhism. The ruling yangban class, then, rejected Buddhism as heterodox, adhering to Cheng-Zhu ideology. Due to its total severance from financial support and philosophical stimulation, Buddhism thus decreased in size and ended up serving as mere psychological comfort for the lower classes, displaying little creativity and vitality.

As this chapter demonstrated, however, many ruling literati of the latter half of Chosŏn held favorable attitudes toward Buddhism. Political minorities or outsiders as well as central bureaucratic elites provided financial support for Buddhism, had a close relationship with Buddhist clerics, and pursued their interests in Buddhist philosophy. This yangban support for and interest in the religion, however, had nothing to do with the “intellectual openness and diversity,” supposedly created by the introduction of new ideologies, as some scholars argue. Although such alternative ideologies as Yangming learning, reform Confucianism, and Catholicism were allowed to some degree, they were sanctioned when they challenged Cheng-Zhu orthodoxy and its social order. These new ideologies, consequently, attracted only a small number of the yangban. Chosŏn in the latter half of the dynasty was a conservative society that was not so open to or tolerant of new ideologies. In this society, no one saved his bureaucratic positions or even his life when he was stigmatized as a follower of heterodox ideas. However, few were punished for their involvement in Buddhism. No one was politically discriminated against for making donations to Buddhist monasteries or having close relationships with the clerics. Although Buddhism was branded as heterodox throughout the Chosŏn period, it was never regarded as an enemy of the Confucian Way (samun nanjŏk) or evil teaching (sagyo 邪敎). Buddhism was widely accepted among the ruling yangban literati class throughout the latter half of Chosŏn.
As literati, many yangban took an intellectual interest in Buddhism. They read Buddhist texts and discussed doctrine with the monks. Some obtained religious insight and even went further to express their conviction in their Buddhist insight by denouncing contemporary monks’ understanding of Buddhist doctrine. In particular, they argued that the kannhwa Sŏn technique, the major practice of the Chosŏn Sŏn tradition of the time, would not lead to enlightenment, and suggested that their intellectual approach to Buddhism instead brought about the highest goal of Buddhism. This yangban approach, in fact, challenged the traditional Korean Sŏn Buddhist notion that intellectual activities such as reading scriptures and studying doctrine would hinder the goal. Chosŏn Buddhists, therefore, faced a challenge to embrace or deny this yangban intellectual approach to Buddhism. In response to this challenge, they developed unique theories regarding the relationship between Sŏn and doctrinal studies, as will be demonstrated in the following chapters. Buddhism in the latter half of Chosŏn was far from being torpid or dead as this chapter demonstrates. In fact, it thrived through active interaction with Confucianism.
Paek’a and Ch’oŭi attempted to resolve the issues that Korean Sŏn Buddhism faced in the social and religious context of the time by establishing Sŏn taxonomies that clarified the relationship between Sŏn (Chan) and Kyo (Jiao). This chapter explores the different positions on the relationship between these two forms of Buddhism which developed in Chan and Sŏn history in order to provide the background for understanding the two monks’ attempts.\(^{112}\)

There were three major positions on the issue of the relationship between Chan and doctrinal teachings in the history of Chan and Sŏn Buddhism: the “unity of Chan and Jiao” (C. \textit{chanjiao yizhi} 禪敎一致), the “separate transmission outside Jiao” (C. \textit{jiaowai biechuan 敎外別傳), and “relinquishing Kyo (C. Jiao) and entering into Sŏn (C. Chan)” (K. \textit{sagyo ipsŏn 捨敎入禪). The Heze (K. Hat’aek) school represented the unity of Chan and doctrinal teachings. In particular, Zongmi 宗密 (780-841) systematized this position by explaining Chan from a doctrinal perspective. He also applied his taxonomy to both the Chan and doctrinal schools of his time to unify these two strands of Buddhism in terms of their teachings. His soteriological model of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation” embodied his vision of the unity of Chan and doctrinal teachings. The Linji (K. Imje) school advocated that Chan is a separate transmission outside the scriptural tradition as this school emerged as a dominant force on the Song Chan stage.

\(^{112}\) Each of these terms has some different yet related meanings. Chan/ Sŏn refers to meditation in general (as a transcription of the Sanskrit term \textit{dhyāna}), meditation in the Chan/ Sŏn schools, and the Chan/ Sŏn school in general; Jiao/ Kyo refers to the scriptures, doctrinal studies, doctrinal teachings, and the doctrinal school in general. Most Chan/ Sŏn monks used each term without distinguishing one meaning from another. They rather used these terms, implying all their meanings. I will follow this usage except in cases where the term refers exclusively to one of its meanings.
Criticizing Zongmi’s integrative Chan vision, the school upheld the radical Chan vision of independence. Linji partisans dismissed Zongmi’s doctrinal Chan as wrong, and at the same time sought authority for their own Chan vision from the Buddha himself. They also developed the *kanhwa* (*K. kanhwa*) meditational technique, which excluded doctrinal studies from Chan soteriology.

Korean Sŏn Buddhism created the soteriological system of “relinquishing Kyo and entering into Sŏn.” This system, which developed during the Chosŏn period, is based on Chinul’s 知訥 (1158-1210) soteriology in the *Pŏchip pyŏrhaengnok chŏryo pyŏngip sagi* 法集別行錄節要井入私記 (*Hereafter the Chŏryo*). He harmonized the two different soteriologies of the Heze and Linji school by integrating the Linji *kanhwa* medition into the Heze schema of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation.” Later, Hyujŏng 休靜 (1520-1604) established the system of “relinquishing Kyo and entering into Sŏn” as the soteriology of his Sŏn lineage in which a student would attain initial sudden enlightenment through doctrinal studies and then practice the *kanhwa* technique to reach the final perfect enlightenment. As Hujŏng’s descendents dominated the Sŏn lineage in the latter half of the Chosŏn dynasty, this Hat’aeek based synthetic model became a dominant soteriology of Korean Sŏn Buddhism.

This chapter examines these three positions on the issue of the Chan (Sŏn) and Jiao (Kyo) relationship to understand Paek’ and Ch’ooui’s taxonomical attempts to resovle the social and religious issues of Chosŏn Sŏn Buddhism.
1. The Unity of Chan and Doctrinal Teachings: the Heze Approach to Chan

1) Background: The emergence of Chan and the development of doctrinal taxonomy

By the mid Tang period (618-907), both meditation and doctrinal studies were considered to be integral parts of Buddhist training. They did not have the sectarian connotations they acquired later. Although there existed certain Buddhists who were devoted exclusively to either meditative or doctrinal practices, as Chiyi 智顗 (538-597), the de facto founder of the Tiantai scholastic school, suggested, the dominant view was that these two practices could both contribute to the ultimate goal of enlightenment.113

The eminent monks of this early period held this view, which could be called the “unity of Chan and Jiao” (chanjiao yizhi 禪敎一致). For example, Chiyi established a system into which the integrative relationship of meditational and doctrinal studies was embedded. Dushun 杜順 (557-640) and Zhiyan 智儼 (602-668), early masters in the Huayan scholastic school, also exemplified this balanced view, devoted as they were to the intensive meditation.114 Shenxiu 神秀 (606-706), the founder of the so-called Northern school of Chan, unified the teachings of such scholastic traditions as the Tiantai, Huayan, and Faxiang schools from the Chan perspective, though he did not directly address the unity of meditation and doctrinal studies.115 These early Chinese Buddhist masters all recognized Chan and Jiao as harmonious with, rather than opposed to, each other.

---

113 Faure 1997: 49.
114 Gimello 1983: 149-164.
As Chan emerged as a distinct religious movement in the early eighth century, a more radical view on the relationship between Chan and doctrinal teachings challenged this traditional view. Shenxiu’s disciples, who advanced into the Tang capital of Chang’an, tried to establish their tradition as autonomous from the Faxiang and Huayan schools.\(^{116}\) They produced Chan transmission records to serve this purpose. Especially in the *Chuan fabao ji* 傳法寶紀, the earliest extant Chan lineage text, compiled around 713, we can find some expressions of the embryonic idea of Chan’s separation from Jiao, an idea that fully developed later in the Song period (960-1279).\(^{117}\) The text questioned the validity of language as a way to explain reality and described the first Chan patriarch Bodhidharma as “abandoning words and departing from the scriptures and commentaries” (息其言語 離其經論).\(^{118}\) This newly-formed image of Chan opposing the scriptural tradition was reinforced with the appearance of such phrases as “transmission of mind to mind” (*yixin chuanxin* 以心傳心) and “no-reliance on words and letters” (*buli wenzi* 不立文字).\(^{119}\) This Chan tendency of disregarding the scriptural tradition inevitably triggered the conflict between Chan and doctrinal studies, which had since become a recurrent issue in the Chan/Sŏn history.

\(^{116}\) For details about the early Chan movement, see McRae 1986 and Faure 1997.

\(^{117}\) The traditional view on the Chan and Jiao relationship was also found in this early Chan movement. The *Lengia shizi ji* 楞伽師資記, another lineage text of the Northern school compiled around this period, describes Chan as harmonious with the scriptures. For details about the *Lengia shizi ji* and the *Chuan fabao ji*, see Yanagida 1971.

\(^{118}\) Yanagida 1971: 337 and 408; the quotation is from ibid., 415.

\(^{119}\) According to Yanagida Seizan, among the earliest extant records of these two phrases are the *Xuemai lun* 血脈論, composed sometime between the late eighth and early ninth centuries, and Zongmi’s *Subcommentary to the Yuanjue jing* 圓覺經大疏鈔: Yanagida 1967: 470-471.
The fourth Huayan patriarch Chengguan 澤觀 (738-839), who had a close connection to the Chan schools of his time, was one of the first who attempted to resolve this tension. To do so, he turned to a unique invention of the Chinese scholastic tradition: “taxonomy of teachings” (panjiao 判教). The panjiao system developed during the process of introducing Buddhism to China. Buddhism was not transmitted to China as a coherent philosophical system. A huge body of Buddhist texts was imported over several centuries, disconnected from their historical and doctrinal backgrounds. Most puzzling to the Chinese Buddhists were the diverse, even contradictory, ideas in what was believed to be the Buddha’s teachings. After centuries of trial and error, they eventually developed a system of taxonomy to address this issue. They organized all Buddhist teachings hierarchically in a comprehensive and coherent doctrinal framework; in this framework, the higher the teachings were ranked, the more consummate and perfect they were considered to be. Thus, this system often functioned as a way to justify the sectarian claims of different scholastic schools.

Chengguan applied this panjiao system to harmonize Chan and doctrinal teachings. Rather than creating his own, however, he used his master Fazang’s five-fold taxonomy, in which five Buddhist teachings were hierarchically organized: the perfect teaching, the sudden teaching, the final teaching of the Great Vehicle, the initial teaching of the Great Vehicle, the teaching of the Small Vehicle, in descending order. Chengguan identified Chan with the

---

120 For details of Zengguan’s connection to the Chan schools, see Yoshizu 1985: 13-64; Sŏ 2001: 94-126.
121 For a general explanation of the doctrinal taxonomy, see Gregory 2002: 93-135; for the various taxonomical systems presented by early scholastic monks, see Mun 2006.
122 Chengguan’s taxonomy is, in fact, almost identical with that of his master Fazang. For Fazang’s doctrinal taxonomy, see Mun 2006: 315-404.
sudden teaching, the second highest in Fazang’s five-fold taxonomy, just below the perfect teaching of the Huayan school:

The sudden expression of the truth that transcends words is exclusively for those with a certain kind of mental capability . . . i.e., for those of the Chan school. The mind-to-mind transmission of Bodhidharma truly refers to this [sudden] teaching . . . Relying on the wordlessness, they use words to directly express the truth that transcends words.  

Although Chengguan unified Chan and doctrinal teachings by integrating Chan into a single doctrinal taxonomy, he placed Chan in a lower position than the teaching of the Huayan scholastic tradition. This subordination of Chan to Jiao led Chengguan’s disciple Zongmi (780-841) to seek a more complete unity of the two forms of Buddhism.

2) Zongmi’s unification of Chan and doctrinal teachings

Zongmi, the fifth patriarch of both the Huayan scholastic and Heze Chan schools, could not accept his master Chengguan’s position. Applying another taxonomy to both Chan and doctrinal teachings, Zongmi systematized the traditional view of the unity of Chan and Jiao. In doing so, he presented a new Chan definition that represented his integrative view.

(1) Chan identified with Jiao

Zongmi regarded Chan as harmonious and identical with the doctrinal teachings. He proclaimed that Chan and doctrinal teachings were no different from each other because they derived from the same origin: “the scriptures are the Buddha’s words and Chan is the Buddha’s intention. All the Buddhas’ minds and mouths can never be contradictory to each other”

123 Dafangguangfo huayanjing suishu yanyi chao 大方佛華嚴經隨疏演義鈔 8, T1736.36.62a29-b03; the translation is with changes from Gregory 2002: 145.
According to Zongmi, this view was, in fact, Chan’s basic principle: both Chan and doctrinal teachings were implicit in the Chan lineage. Zongmi said that such Indian patriarchs as Mahākāśyapa, Aśvaghoṣa, and Nāgārjuna were versed in the Buddhist canonical texts and even composed commentaries themselves; therefore, “[doctrinal] exegetes never disparaged Chan; Chan experts never disparaged [doctrinal] exegesis” (未有講者毁禪禪者毁講) in India. Zongmi went further to say that Chan had been transmitted with the scriptures and commentaries in India.

Zongmi argued that this principle of the unity of Chan and doctrinal teachings had been lost in China, where people had not yet understood Buddhism and, therefore, become attached to the words of the scriptures and commentaries. According to him, Bodhidharma wanted to let them know “the moon was not in the finger [which pointed to it]” (月不在指). Zongmi further explained that Bodhidharma had employed the phrases “transmission of mind to mind” and “no-reliance on words and letters” not to proclaim the Chan rejection of verbalization and conceptualization of mind but to urge the Chinese people to release their attachment to language. Zongmi criticized Buddhists of his time, who did not know the origin of these phrases, for regarding Chan and doctrinal teachings as separate from each other: the doctrinal

124 禪源諸詮集都序 1, T2015.48.400b11.
125 According to Albert Welter, Faru’s epitaph provides the earliest Chan record of an Indian transmission lineage. For the details of the development of the Chan transmission theories, see Welter 2006: 41-113.
126 禪源諸詮集都序, T2015.48.400b12-17.
127 Kamata 1971: 141
128 Kamata 1971: 44.
129 禪源諸詮集都序 T2015.48.400b17-b21.
exegetes “did not know that cultivation and realization [which they explained] were indeed the original matters of Chan” (不知修證正是禪門之本事) while the Chan experts “did not know that the mind-Buddha [that they realized] was indeed the original intention of the scriptures and commentaries” (不知心佛正是經論之本意).\textsuperscript{130}Zongmi introduced a new Chan definition to remove such misunderstandings. He argued that the transmission of Chan in secret had ceased. According to him, from the first to the sixth patriarchs, Chan had been transmitted without explaining the essence of mind, which he designated as “awareness”: the patriarchs waited for their students to realize the essence themselves and granted his validation only after checking the students’ level of realization. However, the founder of the Heze school, Shenhui (神會 668-760), Zongmi argued, transformed Chan. According to Zongmi, Shenhui revealed the essence of mind for the first time in Chan history by saying, “The single word ‘awareness’ is the gate to all wonders” (知之一字眾妙之門).\textsuperscript{131} Zongmi went further to say that Heze’s revelation even changed the Chan transmission: “Does Dharma-transmission of these days speak secret words? No. . .Only [the transmission of] old days were secret but [the transmission of] these days are revealed” (今時傳法者說密語否…但昔密而今顯).\textsuperscript{132} Zongmi added that the previous “silent transmissions” (mochuan 默傳) had taken Bodhidharma’s robe as evidence of transmission while this new “revealed-transmission” (xianchuan 顯傳) took the Buddhist scriptures and

\textsuperscript{130} Ibid., T2015.48.400b25 and b27.
\textsuperscript{131} Ibid., T2015.48.405b04-b15.
\textsuperscript{132} Ibid., T2015.48.405b20-b21.
For Zongmi, a kataphatic discourse of mind became a definite element of Chan. Furthermore, the Chan brand, which explained mind in conceptual terms, came to be recognized as the supreme Chan of all, as can be shown below.

(2) Doctrinalization of Chan and *Panchan* (Taxonomy of Chan)

Zongmi presented a doctrinal explanation of the mind that had been transmitted from the Buddha to Shenhui. By doing so, he could apply taxonomy to both the Chan and doctrinal schools to promote the unity of the two.

Zongmi explained the mind based on the teachings of the *Awakening of Faith In Mahāyāna* (大乘起信論), a Chinese apocryphal text. According to him, the mind had two aspects: immutability (*bubian* 不變) and conditionality (*suiyuan* 隨緣). The former corresponded to the “mind as suchness” in the *Awakening of Faith* and the latter corresponded to the “mind as birth-and-death.” Zongmi argued that these two aspects were neither one nor two; rather, they were two aspects of the same reality. He emphasized the inseparability of the two by applying Chinese terminology, such as essence (*ti* 體) and function (*yong* 用). Zongmi applied this pair of terms again to the category of the immutable essence. As a result, along with the empty and tranquil essence, he embraced two functions of the mind: the “intrinsic functioning of the self-nature” (*zixing benyong* 自性本用) and the “responsive functioning in accord with conditions” (*suiyuan yingyong* 隨緣應用). He called the former “awareness” (*zhī* 知). Zongmi’s framework of the mind can be laid out in Table 2.

---

133 T2015.48.405b18-b20.

134 For Zongmi’s explanation of mind and Chan taxonomy, see Gregory 2002: 224-252
Zongmi’s doctrinal explanation of the mind allowed him to adopt the *panjiao* system as a way to harmonize the diverse Chan and doctrinal teachings. In fact, he developed a new taxonomical system that reflected his view of their unity. In this system, Zongmi not only classified the Chan schools of his time into three categories, but also correlated these Chan schools with the doctrinal schools in terms of the level of their teachings. The lowest was the “Chan that cultivates the mind by eliminating delusion” (*xiwang xiuxin zong* 息妄修心宗). Zongmi identified this Chan with the Northern school of Chan. According to him, this Chan school was dualistic because it did not know that immutability and conditionality were two aspects of one mind: it recognized the diverse phenomena produced by the conditionality of mind as external to that very mind. Zongmi related this Chan to the “teaching of the negation of objects by means of consciousness” (*jiangshi pojing jiao* 將識破境敎) of the Faxiang doctrinal school. The middle was the “Chan that is utterly without support” (*minjue wuji zong* 泯絶無寄宗). Zongmi identified this Chan with the Ox-head school, which, to him, was nihilistic; it was so preoccupied with the empty aspect of the mind that it denied even the very

---

presence of the true mind. Zongmi related this Chan to the Madhyamaka teaching, which he
called the “teaching of hidden intent that negates phenomenal appearances in order to reveal the
nature” (miyi poxiang xianxing jiao 密意破相顯性敎). The highest was the “Chan that
directly reveals mind as nature” (zhixian xinxing zong 直顯心性宗). Zongmi identified this
Chan with the “teaching that directly reveals that the mind is the nature” (xiangshi zhenxin jixing
jiao 顯示真心即性敎) of the tathāgatagarbha doctrine. He assigned this category to two Chan
schools: the Hongzhou and Heze schools. According to Zongmi, the Hongzhou school
overemphasized responsive functioning at the expense of intrinsic functioning, though the school
knew that all phenomena originated from the nature of the mind. This school considered every
activity as a manifestation of the essence of the mind, whether good or evil. Greed, anger,
compassion, good deeds, and evil deeds were all produced by the mind-as-suchness. For
Zongmi, such a possible antinomian tendency was due to ignorance of “awareness” (i.e., the
intrinsic functioning). According to him, only the Heze school fully and perfectly understood
the nature of the mind and was therefore the supreme Chan school. The entire correspondence
is charted in Table 3.

Zongmi’s taxonomy of Chan served dual functions, just like the taxonomies of the
doctrinal teachings. His taxonomy reconciled the differences of the Chan schools by
integrating them into this threefold Chan taxonomy. At the same time, however, although his
taxonomy was intended to resolve Chan sectarianism of the time, it in fact promoted his Chan
school to the highest position and made all the other Chan schools subordinate to his. Hence,
Zongmi’s Chan taxonomy featured both “ecumenical” and “sectarian” functions.\footnote{Gregory 1988: 364.}
Jiao | Chan | Chan Tradition
---|---|---
directly reveals that the mind is the nature | directly reveals mind as nature | Heze Hongzhou
hidden intent that negates phenomenal appearances in order to reveal the nature | utterly without support | Ox-head
negation of objects by means of consciousness | cultivates the mind by eliminating delusion | Northern school

(3) Chan and doctrinal teachings from the viewpoint of Buddhist practice

Zongmi developed a soteriological path that resonated with his view of the unity of Chan and doctrinal teachings. These two forms of Buddhism constituted two essential elements of his soteriological path of “sudden enlightenment followed by gradual cultivation” (*dunwu jianxiu* 頓悟漸修).

Zongmi’s path started with “sudden enlightenment.” This initial enlightenment, according to him, referred to sudden realization that one’s mind was originally nothing other than the dharma-body: a student could achieve this realization when he came across a good friend who explained the meanings of the essence and functioning of suchness.  

Emphasizing the intellectual nature of sudden enlightenment, Zongmi called it “understanding-awakening” (*jiewu* 解悟). For him, this intellectual nature made sudden enlightenment different from the final perfect enlightenment and thus necessitated further cultivation of Buddhist training.

Zongmi asserted that sudden enlightenment should be followed by gradual cultivation, though he

---


described this initial experience as “anuttara-samyak-sambodhi, achieved at the time of the first arousal of resolve to attain enlightenment” (初發心時便成阿耨菩提): 139

Even though one suddenly realizes that the dharmakāya, the true mind, is wholly identical with Buddha, still, because for numerous kalpas one has deludedly clung to the four elements as constituting one’s self [so that this view] has become second nature and is difficult to do away with all at once, one must cultivate oneself on the basis of [this experience of] enlightenment. When one has reduced it and further reduced it until there is nothing left to reduce, then it is called attaining Buddhahood. 140

Here, Zongmi argued that even after sudden enlightenment, a student still required cultivation because the habitual power of defilements was too strong to be removed all at once by the experience of sudden enlightenment. According to him, through the process of removing defilements and cultivating virtuous practices, the student advanced step by step into the perfect realization of reality. Zongmi designated this experience after cultivation “realization-awakening” (zhengwu 證悟). Hence, his soteriological path consisted of three stages: “understanding-awakening,” “gradual cultivation,” and “realization-awakening.”

Zongmi assured the unity of Chan and doctrinal teachings by demanding both Chan meditation and doctrinal studies in this path. As seen before, one of the main Chan arguments against the unity of these two Buddhist practices was that doctrinal teachings hindered enlightenment while only Chan could foster it. 141 Zongmi refuted this Chan claim:

139 Yuanjuejing dashu shiyi chao 圓覺經大疏義鈔 6, X245.09.590b11.
140 Kamata 1971: 340; the translation is from Gregory 2002: 195.
141 Most Chan monks believed that Chan and Jiao were neutral; the students’ mental capabilities or tendencies made a certain teaching helpful or harmful in their spiritual journey. For example, Zongmi said, “if one gets attached to [the words], every word becomes a boil or a wart; if one penetrates [the meanings of the words], all the words become wondrous medications” (執則字字瘡疣 通則文文妙藥; T2015.48.407b12). Such Linji monks as Yuanwu also shared this view, which was shown in his
If one does not preach the teachings of the scriptures by discarding them and only points out that the mind is the teachings of the scriptures, he indeed brings trouble to the Chan school.  

棄卻經教不說 但指於云心是經教 實為帶累禪宗矣

Rather, Zongmi emphasized the complementary roles of Chan and doctrinal teachings. He gave importance to doctrinal teachings in the sudden enlightenment component of his path. As seen above, he described sudden enlightenment as the experience generated by the conceptual understanding of the nature of mind and cultivation, an experience that doctrinal teachings could provide. He further emphasized the role of doctrinal teachings in the process of gradual cultivation:

If one just depends on the sayings of the Buddha and does not infer for himself, his realization will be no more than a matter of baseless faith. If one just holds onto direct perception, taking what he perceives for himself to be authoritative without comparing it to the sayings of the Buddha, then how can he know whether it is true or false? Non-Buddhists also directly perceive the principles to which they adhere and, practicing according to them, obtain results. Since they maintain that they are correct, how else would we know they were false [without the word of the Buddha]?  

According to Zongmi, the correct Buddhist cultivation required the direct experience of enlightenment through Chan meditation as well as verification of that experience through doctrinal teachings. His emphasis on the complementary role of Chan and doctrinal teachings was also shown in his detailed map of the path of “sudden enlightenment followed by gradual explanation of the phrases “dead words” and “live words” (see Ch. 3 for Yuanwu’s explanation of these phrases). However, despite this shared view, the Heze and Linji monks revealed their differences on the issue of the validity of doctrinal teachings in Chan soteriology, as my discussion below demonstrates.

142 Yuanjuejing lueshuzhichao 4, X248.09.860b16; quoted from Araki 1963: 159.
143 Chanyuan zhuquanji douxu, T2015.48.401a15-a18; the translation is from Gregory 2002: 228.
cultivation.” In the *Chanyuan zhuyuan ji duxu* (hereafter the *Duxu*, he divided this path into ten stages, of which sudden enlightenment was the first stage and realization-awakening was the last. In this model, doctrinal teachings provided orientation for the experiences that would be acquired from meditation practice at each stage.\(^{144}\)

Zongmi doctrinalized Chan by explaining the secretly-transmitted essence of the mind and identified Chan and doctrinal schools in terms of the contents of their teachings. In doing so, he introduced the hierarchical system of Chan teachings for the first time in Chan history and unified various Chan teachings under this system. He also established a soteriological path in which both doctrine and meditation played a balanced role. Although his doctrinalization of Chan was harshly criticized by later Linji masters, his view of the unity of Chan and doctrinal teachings remained influential in the subsequent period.

3) The unity of Chan in late Tang and early Song

Zongmi’s vision of the unity of Chan and doctrinal teachings continued in the period between late Tang and early Song, particularly in the territory of Wuyue 吳越 (907-978), the region that enjoyed relative peace and prosperity during the political upheaval of this time. The traditional approach to Chan in this region was linked to Fayan Wenyi 法眼文益 (885-958) and his disciples, who led a revival of Buddhism with the support of the Wuyue political leaders. These Fayan-affiliated masters advocated the unity of Chan and doctrinal traditions. Among them, Yongming Yanshou 永明延壽 (904-975) was the most explicit in propagating their brand of Chan. In his magnum opus, the *Zongjing lu* 宗鏡錄, Yanshou argued that the Buddha’s

\(^{144}\) Kamata 1971: 222-247; Araki 1963: 161 and 179.
mind (i.e., Chan) could be realized through the Buddha’s words (i.e., the scriptures).\textsuperscript{145}

Zanning 贊寧 (919-1001), who hailed from the Wuyue region, played a major role in transmitting this Fayan vision of Chan to the Song court. Zanning served as the highest Buddhist official in the court and was well reputed among the literati for his erudition and literary talent. Probably because of his Wuyue origin, Zanning endorsed the Fayan idea of Chan, which prevailed until his death.\textsuperscript{146}

The unity of Chan and doctrinal teachings, represented by Zongmi, was the traditional stance on the relationship between these two forms of Buddhism. This standpoint was seriously challenged by the Song Chan radicals.

2. Chan Outside the Teaching: The Linji Approach to Chan

The Linji lineage emerged as a dominant force in Chan Buddhism during the Song dynasty (960-1279). The monks of this lineage promoted Chan as separate from the scriptural tradition, criticizing Zongmi’s view of the unity of Chan and doctrinal teachings. They also developed a unique Chan meditation practice that embodied their radical Chan vision.

1) The Linji criticism of Zongmi

The Linji monks of the Song period criticized Zongmi to establish their vision of Chan as orthodox. Their criticism mostly focused on Zongmi’s concept of awareness, which laid the foundation for his view of the unity of Chan and doctrinal teachings. Juefan Huihong

\textsuperscript{145} Zongjing lu 1, T2016.48.418a16-18: re-quoted from Welter 2008: 36. For detailed analysis of Yanshou’s view on the unity between Chan and Jiao, see Welter 2011: 69-96 and Welter 2011.

\textsuperscript{146} Zanning composed two works on Buddhist history, the Song Gaoseng zhu  宋高僧傳 and the Dasong Seng shilue 大宋僧史略. For details of Zanning’s career in the Song court, see Welter 2006: 163-172.
觉範惠洪 (1071-1128) launched an attack against Zongmi. In his Linjian lu 林間錄, he refuted Zongmi’s criticism of the three Chan schools of the Northern, Ox-head, and Hongzhou lines. Huihong described Zongmi as someone whose level of understanding Buddhism was not profound enough to evaluate the teachings of the three Chan schools properly. In particular, Huihong compared the founder of the Ox-head school Niutou 牛頭 (594-657) and the founder of the Heze school Shenhui: “[Niutou] corrected all illnesses of intellectual view one by one while Heze openly established an intellectual view. We can see who is superior and who is inferior” ([牛頭]一一皆治知見之病 而荷澤公然立知見 優劣可見). Huihong further criticized Zongmi’s doctrinal approach to Chan. He even claimed that Zongmi’s kataphatic discourse of the mind was an act that “belittled the Way” 輕道. Huanglong Sixin 黃龍死心 (1044-1115) was also critical of Zongmi’s approach. Twisting the Heze school’s emblematic phrase, Sixin proclaimed, “The single word ‘awareness’ is the gate to all disasters” (知之一字衆禍之門).

The Linji criticism of Zongmi’s Heze school culminated with branding Shenhui as someone who was entrapped in intellectual defilements. The Deyi version of the Platform Sūtra, compiled in 1290 by the Linji master Mengshan Deyi 夢山德異 (1231-1308), introduced an episode between Shenhui and his master the sixth patriarch Huineng 慧能 (638-713).

One day the Master said to the congregation, “I have something with no head, no tail, no name, no label, no back, no front: do you recognize it?” Shenhui came forth and said, “This is the original source of all Buddhas, my Buddha-nature.”

147 Linjian lu, X1624.87.249a10.
149 Sixin’s phrase became well-known in the Chan/Sŏn community.
The Master said, “I just told you it has no name or label; then you immediately called it the original source, the Buddha-nature. Later on, when you have a bunch of thatch covering your head, you will still just be a “follower of intellectual knowledge and conceptual interpretation.”

一日 師告眾曰 吾有一物 無頭無尾 無名無字 無背無面 諸人還識否 神會出曰 是諸佛之本源 神會之佛性. 師曰 向汝道無名無字 汝便喚作本源佛性 汝向去有把茆蓋頭也 只成箇知解宗徒.

This passage does not appear in the Tunhuang version of the Sūtra, which was compiled much earlier in the Tang period. Neither does it appear in the related editions of the Huixin (惠昕) version of 967. In the Jingde chuanheng lu 景德傳燈錄 of 1004, the episode appeared but without the part calling Shenhui a “follower of intellectual knowledge and conceptual interpretation” (zhijie zongtu 知解宗徒).

In the recorded sayings of Yuanwu 圓悟 (1063-1135), published in 1134, Yuanwu was described as being familiar with the whole episode: he uses the pejorative description to refer to Shenhui though he does not detail the episode.

Hence, the entire episode took shape sometime between 1004 and 1134 and was added into the Deyi version of the Sūtra in 1290. The intention of the episode is obvious: to criticize the Chan vision of Zongmi, who proclaimed himself as the fifth patriarch of Shenhui’s Heze school. By

---

150 Juze version 駒澤本 74; quoted from In’gyŏng 2000: 257-258; the same episode is also included in the Zongbao 宗寶 version of the Sūtra (Liuzu Dashi fabaotan jing 六祖大師法寶壇經, T2008.459b29-c04); the translation of the episode is slightly modified from Cleary 1998: 66.

151 There are three major versions of the Platform Sūtra: (1) Tunhuang version; (2) Huixin version; (3) Qisong 契嵩 version. Versions (2) and (3) are not extant. But the Shinpukuji, Daijōji and Tenneiji editions are related to (2) while the Deyi and Zongbao editions are related to (3). For details, see Shiina Kōyū 1989 and Schlütter 2007.

152 Jingde chuanheng lu 5, T2076.51.245a12-a24; In’gyŏng 2000: 257-258.

153 Yuanwu fugo chanshi yulu 圓悟佛果禪師語錄 4, T1997.47.729c05-c07; In’gyŏng 2000: 266. In the Chōryō of 1209, Chinul also designated Shenhui as the “master of the school of intellectual knowledge and conceptual interpretation” (chihae chongsa 知解宗師) though he did not record the episode (HPC 4, 741a03).
branding Shenhui as a “follower of intellectual knowledge and conceptual interpretation” under the authority of the sixth patriarch, Huineng, the episode branded Zongmi’s doctrinal approach to Chan as an act of generating intellectual obstructions. Whether intended or not, this episode helped degrade the view of doctrinal teachings as a whole within Chan. Although several later Chan masters affirmed the necessity of doctrinal teachings in Buddhist training, they never recovered the status they had been given in Zongmi’s system.

2) Separate transmission outside the teaching

The Linji lineage of the Song period was closely associated with the campaign to establish a radical Chan vision that defined Chan as a unique tradition transmitted separately from the scriptural tradition. This vision, the incipiency of which existed in earlier periods as seen before, found its full-fledged expression in a phrase that was popularized in Song: “Separate transmission outside the teaching” (jiaowai biechuan 敎外別傳). 154 This phrase represented the Chan break from or rejection of the scriptural tradition: it challenged the authority of the scriptures as a vehicle for maintaining and transmitting the teachings of the Buddha by describing Chan as a separate or even superior transmission. This vision developed in close relation to the Linji lineage. 155

---

154 This phrase constituted the four phrases that defined Chan identity in Song period, along with the following three phrases: “directly pointing to the human mind” (zhizhi renxin 直指人心), “seeing the nature and accomplishing the Buddhahood” (jianxing chengfo 見性成佛),” and “not positing the words and letters” (buli wenzi 不立文字).

155 The phrase “jiaowai biechuan” first appears in Ch. 6 of the Zutang ji 祖堂集: K 45, 276a26-27), but as Welter points out, the appearance of the phrase in this record is insignificant in terms of its connection to the campaign of establishing the radical Chan identity; Welter 2000: 81.
The earliest records of the separate transmission of Chan appeared in Linji-lineage related texts. The first such text was the *Baolin zhuan* 寶林傳, the lineage record that endorsed the Mazu lineage, the precursor of the Linji lineage. As Griffith Foulk points out, this record signaled the Chan departure from the scriptural tradition. It depicted the “transmission of a superior, formless dharma directly and personally from Śākyamuni to Mahākāśyapa” for the first time in Chan/ Sŏn history.\(^{156}\) The *Chuanxin fayao* 傳心法要, the teachings of Huangbo Xiyun 黃檗希運 (d. 850), the teacher of Linji, clearly stated the idea that Chan transmitted the “mind” separately from the scriptures and commentaries.\(^{157}\)

[The Buddha] widely distributed the wondrous Way and employed expedient means to preach the existence of the three vehicles. . . . [However], since all [three vehicles] were not the cardinal Way, [he] said, “there is only a path of one vehicle; the remaining two are not authentic.” However, since [he] finally could not reveal the Dharma of the one mind, he entrusted then one mind to Mahākāśyapa by sharing his Dharma-seat with him. [This is] preaching the Dharma while transcending the words.\(^{158}\)

According to this text, the mind-dharma was never included in the provisional teachings of the three vehicles; rather, it was taught separately by the Buddha Śākyamuni to Mahākāśyapa, the alleged first Indian patriarch of Chan, without relying on language. Although the *Chuanxin fayao* did not directly express the phrase “separate transmission outside the teaching,” the text explicitly presented the notion of Chan as an independent tradition that derived directly from the Buddha himself.

---

\(^{156}\) Foulk 1999: 225.

\(^{157}\) It is interesting that the text was compiled in the early 850s by Pei Xiu 裴休 (797-870), a Tang lay Buddhist who was a student and patron of Zongmi and later converted to Huangbo’s Chan.

\(^{158}\) *Chuanxin fayao* T2012A.48.382b05-08.
Albert Welter argues that the *Jingde chuandeng lu* represented the Linji lineage endeavor to establish Chan as separate from the scriptural tradition and reject the harmonious view of Chan and doctrinal teachings.\(^\text{159}\) According to Welter, two different prefaces were composed for this lamp record: (1) the original, but, forgotten preface, written by Daoyuan 道原 (d.u.); (2) the extant preface by the literatus Yang Yi 楊億 (974-1020). Welter asserts that these two prefaces reveal two different interpretations of Chan, depending on their respective Chan affiliation. The preface by Daoyuan, who was a descendent of the Fayan lineage, promotes the harmony of Chan and doctrinal teachings. Daoyuan’s original title for the record, the *Fozu tongcan ji* 佛祖同參集 (*Collection of the Common Practice of the Buddhas and Patriarchs*), also suggests that he compiled the record to promote the Fayan brand of Chan. On the contrary, Welter continues, the preface of the literatus Yang Yi, who supported the Linji lineage, endorses Chan independence. Yang Yi used the phrase “jiaowai biexing” (separate practice outside the teaching 教外別行) to refer to Chan in his preface. He also retitled Daoyuan’s work as the “*Jingde chuandeng lu*” (*Record of Lamp Transmission compiled in the Jingde Era*), the title that reflected the nature of the new Chan brand.\(^\text{160}\)

Though we cannot be sure how much Yang Yi transformed the contents of Daoyuan’s original compilation, the present version of the *Chuandeng lu* records an episode between Bodhidharma and his disciples that expresses opposition to the traditional view on Chan and doctrinal teachings.

\(^{159}\) For details of the Linji lineage connection to the *Chuandeng lu*, see Welter 2006: 115-160 and 172-186.

\(^{160}\) Welter 2000: 91-94.
After nine years, Bodhidharma wanted to return to India. Calling together his disciples, he said, “The time for me to return to India is at hand. Can each of you say what you have attained?”

A disciple named Daofu said, “As I see it, it is not attached to the words and letters, nor is it separate from words and letters. This is the functioning of the Way.”

The master said, “You have attained my skin.”

The nun Zongchi said, “What I understand is like a glorious glimpse of the realm of Akṣobhya Buddha. Seen once, it need not be seen again.”

The master said, “You have attained my flesh.”

A disciple named Daoyu said, “The four elements are all empty. The five skandhas are without actual existence. As I see it, there is not a single dharma to be grasped.”

The master said, “You have attained my bones.”

Finally, Huike bowed and stood up straight.

The master said, “You have attained my marrow.”

This episode is also recorded in the *Zutang ji* 祖堂集 of 952. In the episode of the *Zutang ji*, however, Daofu does not appear. According to the *Zutang ji* version, the other three disciples Zongchi, Daoyu, and Huike were described as receiving Bodhidharma’s flesh, bones, and marrow, respectively, but with no explanation. The *Chuandeng lu* version of the episode demonstrates outright rejection of the traditional stance on the relationship between Chan and doctrinal teachings. Daofu’s position in the episode coincides exactly with that of Zongmi and Yangshou on the relationship of the two forms of Buddhism. In particular, as mentioned before, Zongmi argued that Bodhidharma urged the Chinese to remove their attachment to language rather than departing from it. By describing Daofu as receiving skin, a symbol of the superficial level of understanding, and Huike as receiving the marrow of Bodhidharma’s Dharma,

161 *Jingde chuandeng lu* 3, T2076.51.219b27-c05: the translation is slightly modified from Ferguson 2000: 16-17.

162 *Zutang ji* 2, K vol. 45, 245a14-16.
this episode rejects the position of the “unity of Chan and doctrinal teachings” and instead endorse that of a “separate transmission outside the teaching,” though this phrase does not appear there.

Welter also argues that the Tiansheng Guangdeng lu 天聖廣燈錄 of 1029 was the earliest text to connect the Linji lineage explicitly to the phrase “separate transmission outside the teaching.” The phrase, which never appears in the Chuandeng lu, does appear several times in the Guangdeng lu, the lamp record compiled by the Linji school patron Li Zunxu 李遵勗 (988-1038). According to Welter, the Guangdeng lu describes this phrase as the creation of the Linji master Yexian Guisheng 葉縣歸省 (fl. 10th century). In his biography, Guisheng connected this phrase especially to Bodhidharma: he used the phrase “separate transmission outside the teaching” as an answer for the famous gong’an “why did Bodhidharma come from the west?” The biography of Shishuang Chuyuan 石霜楚圓 (987-1040) also connects the Linji school to this phrase. In explaining the same gong’an, Chuyuan interpreted the phrase as “direct pointing to the human mind” (zhizhi renxin 直指人心) and “seeing the nature and accomplishing the Buddhahood” (jianxing chengfo 见性成佛). As Welter points out, because Shishuang was the master of Huanglong 黃龍 (1002-1069) and Yangqi 楊岐 (992-1049), the heads of the two Linji school branches that had dominated the Linji lineage since Song, the Guangdeng lu describes the Linji school as a stronghold for this vision of

---

163 For details of the Linji lineage connection to the Tiansheng Guangdeng lu, see Welter 2006: 186-206.
164 Tiansheng Guangdeng lu 16, X1553.78.496a23-b03; Welter 2000: 84.
165 Ibid., vol. 18, X1553.78.504c09-10; Welter 2000: 85.
Chan independence. This link was officially recognized as the lamp record was published under imperial authority with the reign appellation of Tiansheng.166

According to Yanagida Seizan, the phrase “separate transmission outside the teaching” appears also in the Linji huizhao chanshi taji.167 This inscription records a short biography of Linji, which is appended in the Ma Fang 马防 (d.u.) version of the Recorded Sayings of Linji of 1120. In the inscription, Linji uses the phrase to define Chan as separate from the scriptures and commentaries: “These [scriptures and commentaries] are prescriptions for the salvation of the world, not the principles of the separate transmission outside the teaching” (此濟世之醫方也 非敎外別傳之旨).168 This statement, which does not appear in the biography of Linji from the Zutang ji, directly links the phrase to Linji, the founder of the Linji school.169 Hence, by the first half of the twelfth century, the Linji school was firmly tied to this new brand of Chan by Song Linji masters. The notion of Chan as a separate transmission spread widely, for the Linji master Wumen Huikai (無門慧開 1183~1260) recorded the episode “The World-honored one holds up a flower” (shizun nianhua 世尊拈花), which embodied this radical notion, in his famous gong’an collection, the Wumen guan 無門關.

166 Welter 2000: 82-86.
167 Yanagida 1967: 472.
168 Linji huizhao chanshi taji, T1985.47.506c10-11; the translation is from Yanagida 1972: 73.
169 Zutang ji 19; K vol. 45 353b25-354a21.
3) Kanhua Chan

The Linji lineage developed a new Chan meditational technique to substantialize its view on Chan and doctrinal teachings. This technique, called kanhua (observing the key phrase 看話), excluded doctrinal studies from the Chan soteriological path.

The kanhua technique developed in reaction to “literary Chan,” popular among Yunmen and Linji monks of early Song. Literary Chan was based on gong’an literature, which represented the Chan vision of separation from the scriptural Buddhism: the literature replaced the Buddha and his teachings, i.e., the scriptures, by the Chan patriarchs and the stories of their enlightenment, i.e., the gong’an stories, for the personal and textual authority. However, the growing emphasis of literary Chan on erudition and literary endeavor conflicted with the Chan principle of “not relying on language.” Dahui 大慧 (1089-1163), the inventor of the kanhua technique, is even said to have burned the woodblocks of his master Yuanwu’s gong’an collection, the Biyan lu 碧巖錄.¹⁷⁰

The kanhua meditation technique takes the brief key phrase of a gong’an, not the whole gong’an story, as its object of practice. As such, the technique does not demand any significant knowledge of Buddhist doctrines. As Schlütter points out, Dahui presented this technique to the literati who had little doctrinal knowledge.¹⁷¹ In fact, what is important in the practice of the kanhua technique is to create the sensation of doubt, which serves as the major driving force

¹⁷⁰ George Keyworth questioned the historical validity of the story that Dahui burned the wood block, arguing that Dahui was not opposed to the literary approach (Keyworth 2001: 317). However, whether or not Dahui was against the approach, there surely existed such Chan monks as Hongying Shaowu 洪英邵武 (1012-1070) and Xinwen Yunben 心聞雲貳 (fl. 12th century) who criticized the literary approach to kongan. In particular, Xinwen regarded the story as historical fact. For Hongying’s criticism, see Chanlin baoxun 禪林寶訓 1, T2022.48.1021b16-18 and for Xinwen’s criticism, see Chanlin baoxun 4, T2022.48.1036b19-c03.

that can lead to enlightenment.\textsuperscript{172} For example, the \textit{wu} of Zhaozhou Congshen 趙州從諗 (778–897), which Dahui often recommended to the literati as an object of \textit{kanhua} practice, shows that the technique relies little on knowledge of Buddhism. The entire \textit{gong’an} for this \textit{huatou} is the following short episode:

Once a monk asked Zhaozhou, “Does a dog have Buddha-nature or not?” Zhaozhou replied, “No!” (\textit{wu}).\textsuperscript{173}

趙州和尚因僧問 狗子還有佛性也無 州云無.

According to Robert Buswell, during the \textit{kanhua} practice of this “\textit{wu}” (no) \textit{huatou}, the sensation of doubt occurs when a student feels frustrated after realizing that he cannot resolve why Zhaozhou denied the basic Mahāyāna doctrine that all sentient beings, including dogs, inherently possess Buddha-nature. Here, knowledge of a rather simple doctrine is sufficient to launch \textit{kanhua} meditation practice. In fact, Dahui did not ask or expect his literati followers who investigated this \textit{wu} to know the whole range of Chinese Buddhist discourse on “Buddha-nature;” neither did he himself provide any in his letters for the literati.

Dahui suggested that a \textit{huatou} could have nothing to do with Buddhism. As Miriam Levering points out, Dahui believed that an event experienced in one’s secular life could function as a \textit{huatou}. He took birth and death as such examples:

There is no language to describe Chan. One must achieve his understanding through an awakening. Since I was seventeen years old, I had been seized with doubt concerning this matter. After I struggled for seventeen years, I finally could rest. Before I achieved enlightenment, I often thought to myself: I am now already of such and such an age. Before I was born on this earth, where was I? My mind was pitch-black and had no idea where I came from. Since I did not know my origin, this was what is called,

\textsuperscript{172} According to Gaofeng Yuanmiao 高峰原妙 (1238-1295), the sensation of doubt is one of the three essentials of the \textit{kanhua} practice, along with great faith and great fury. For detailed analysis of the role of the sense of doubt in the \textit{kanhua} practice, see Buswell 2004: 225-236.

“Life is a great matter” (C. sheng da 生大). When I die in the future, where shall I go? When I thought about this, my mind was also totally dark and had no idea where I would go from here. Since I did not know my destiny, this was what Buddhism called, “Death is a great matter” (C. sida 死大). “Existence is impermanent and life ends quickly. Life and Death is a Great Matter.”

Later Linji masters showed that not only such dramatic events of life as birth and death but also daily activities could be applied in the kanhua technique. According to Nathasha Heller, the Yuan Linji master Zhongfeng Mingben 中峰明本 (1263-1323) used the activity of reading in this way. In the preface to his explanation of the the Vajracchedikāprajñāpāramitā-sūtra, Mingben told his lay followers not to try to understand every word:

If you cannot completely investigate it, or if your remaining doubts have not dissipated, you just must take up the word that you are contemplating, and examine oneself…One morning you will see through this huatou and then [think to yourself] the six hundred scrolls of this great work are the heritage within my breast.

Here, Mingben suggested that an ambiguous part of readings could be huatou. He recommended that his lay students employ the doubt or curiosity in their kanhua practice rather than try to figure out what the reading meant intellectually.

The kanhua technique opposes the intellectual functioning of mind. Dahui expressed such opposition in his Shuzhuang 書狀, his letters that offered meditative guidance to his literati

---

174 Dahui pujue chanshi pushuo 大慧普覺禪師普說 16, T1998A.47.878c16-23; The translation is from Levering ???

175 GL 32156a; the translation is from Heller 2010: 153.
followers. Rejecting all kinds of intellectual approaches to *huatou* practice, Dahui warned that the tendency of intellectualization, to which the literati were subject, would create a major obstacle to the practice. He explained why the literati with the intellectual tendency found it difficult to succeed in their practice:

[The literati] have a great many intellectual views. If they see a Chan teacher slightly open his mouth and move his tongue, they hastily assume all at once. Therefore, they are rather inferior to the dull people, who do not have wrong knowledge and insight, directly arouse [enlightenment] with one word and one phrase in one occasion and one realm.¹⁷⁶

Here, Dahui said that intellectualization hindered Buddhist practice because it reified what a practitioner should experience himself. He went further to oppose the act of reading itself: “if one has read many books, he has many delusions; if one has read few books, he has few delusions” (讀得書多底 無明多 讀得書少底 無明少).¹⁷⁷

Dahui’s opposition to intellectualization led him and his disciples to dismiss doctrinal studies as mere intellectual acts and, therefore, hindrances to *kanhua* practice. In the *Shuzhuang*, Dahui repeatedly asked the literati not to consult the scriptures while practicing the *kanhua* technique. He even asserted that reading the scriptures without practicing the technique would be a foolish act.¹⁷⁸ His disciple Daoqian 道謙 (d.u.) more directly stated opposition to the scriptures in *kanhua* practice. In a dialogue with a lay Buddhist who performed such practices as reading scriptures and worshipping the Buddha yet did not have a breakthrough


¹⁷⁷ Araki 1969: 130.

experience, Daoqian asserted that reading scriptures and worshipping the Buddha hinder *kanhua* practice.\(^{179}\)

The Linji lineage developed *kanhua* meditation as a practice representing the “separate transmission outside the teaching.” The technique does not rely on the scriptures and even dismisses them as a hindrance. As a matter of fact, many Linji masters, including Dahui, did indeed rely on words and letters: they read scriptures and Chan texts and often quoted these texts in their sermons. Nonetheless, the image of *kanhua* meditation technique as the rejection of the scriptures did not change. By criticizing Zongmi’s synthetic Chan vision and developing the *kanhua* technique, the Linji school represented itself as a Chan school that proclaimed a radical break from doctrinal Buddhism.

3. Relinquishing the Teaching and Entering into Sŏn (K. *Sagyo Ipsŏn* 捨教入禪): Korean Synthesis of the Heze and Linji Soteriologies

The “unity of Chan (Sŏn) and Jiao (Kyo)” and the “separate transmission outside Jiao” represented two main positions on the relationship between Chan and doctrinal teachings. One of the major differences between these two positions involved the validity of doctrinal teachings in Chan soteriology. The Heze (K. Hat’aek) position regarded “doctrinal teachings” as an essential element of Buddhist practice in the scheme of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation.” In contrast, the Linji (K. Imje) position rejected the validity of doctrinal teachings in its exclusivist Chan practice of *kanhua* meditation. The systematic attempt to bridge the gap between these two positions was made in Korea, where Sŏn sectarianism was not so serious. This attempt produced a soteriological system, which could be named “relinquishing Kyo and

\(^{179}\) *Shan nuren chuan* 善女人傳, X1657.88.405c19-406a16.
entering into Sŏn” (K. *sagyo ipsôn* 拾敎入禪).\footnote{I use this phrase to refer to a specific Korean Buddhist soteriological model that synthesized the Heze and Linji soteriologies.} Although this system became a dominant soteriology of Korean Sŏn Buddhism in Chosŏn (1392-1897), the idea of the system developed from the age-old tension between Sŏn and Kyo in the previous dynastic period.\footnote{The phrase “*sagyo ipsôn*” often appears in the Sŏn texts of late Chosŏn. Even though it seldom appears in the texts compiled prior to late Chosŏn, Hyujŏng (1520-1604) firmly established it as a major practical schema for his students.}

1) Early Korean Sŏn view on the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo

The tension between Sŏn and doctrinal teachings in Korea was as deeply-rooted as the tension in China. This tension began from the time of the introduction of Sŏn to Korea in the eighth century. The Korean monks who brought Sŏn to Korea established the Nine Mountain Sŏn schools (*kusan Sŏnmun* 九山禪門), seven of which belonged to the Mazu lineage. The founders of the Korean Sŏn schools expressed their radical interpretation of Sŏn. For example, the Kaji mountain school founder, Toŭi 道義 (d.u.), argued that one could not attain the mind-Dharma of Sŏn even after reading scriptures for years.\footnote{*Sŏnmun pojangnok* 禪門寶藏錄 HPC 6, 479a06.} The Saja mountain school founder, Toyun 道允 (798-868), abandoned all doctrinal studies to cultivate Chan, proclaiming, “How could the teaching of the Perfect and Sudden (i.e. Hwaŏm) school be equal to the Dharma of the Mind-seal (i.e. Sŏn)!” (圓頓之旨 豈如心印之法).\footnote{Ibid., 474a15.} The Sŏngju mountain school founder, Muyŏm 無染 (800-888), epitomized the Sŏn claim of its superiority to the scriptural tradition in this early stage of Korean Sŏn. He compared Kyo and Sŏn to the “tongued-realm” (*yusŏl t’o...*
According to Muyŏm, Kyo referred to the expedient means of relying on language. He asserted that because Kyo is entrapped in conceptual dichotomies, even the highest level of insight that can be attained through Kyo still has lingering traces of those dichotomies. On the contrary, Muyŏm continued, Sŏn referred to direct transmission beyond language. He argued that Sŏn was the truth itself without any trace of the dichotomy. This Korean Sŏn view of the two strands of Buddhism inevitably generated a tension with the already-established Kyo schools. This tension became so serious and intense that it lasted until the time of Chinul (1158-1210) though there was a brief attempt to reconcile such tension in mid Koryŏ.

2) Chinul’s soteriology: a basis for sagyo ipsŏn

Chinul introduced the soteriological model of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation” to the Korean Sŏn community in order to reconcile the tension between Sŏn and Kyo. The conflict between the two strands of Buddhism in Chinul’s time was so aggravated that it even threatened the raison d’être of Buddhism itself. Hyesim (1178-1234), the successor of Chinul, testified to this situation. According to him, Sŏn experts and Kyo exegetes

---

184 Ibid., 473b21-23.
185 Ibid., 473b21-474a03.
186 Five major doctrinal schools were founded in the early seventh century in Korea though somewhat discredited: the Keyul chong (Vinaya), Yŏlban chong (nirvāṇa), Pŏpsŏng chong, Wŏnyung (Hwaŏm) chong, and Pŏpsang (Yogācāra) chong: Buswell 1991: 6-9.
187 Ùich’ŏn 義天 (1055–1101) attempted to reconcile the tension between Sŏn and Kyo by establishing the Korean Ch’ont’ae school. Although his attempt was supported by the Koryŏ court, it failed because of his anti-Sŏn tendency as well as his early death. Consequently, his attempt to unify the two strands of Buddhism ended up adding another school to the already-sectarianized Korean Buddhist community. Buswell 1991: 14-17 and Ch’oe 2002: 29-57.
rejected and slandered each other, and eventually, the conflict between the two reached the point that neither could lead practitioners to enlightenment. Chinul tried to lay the theoretical foundation to reconcile the conflict.

For most of his career, Chinul regarded Sŏn and Kyo as harmonious and equally essential in Buddhist training. His spiritual journey embodied his view. According to his biography, Chinul had three spiritual breakthrough experiences in his life, all of which came from reading Buddhist texts: the first breakthrough experience came sometime between 1182 and 1185 from reading the Platform Sūtra; the second, in 1188, from reading Li Tongxuan’s 李通玄 (635-730) commentary to the Avataṃsaka-sūtra; the third, in 1198, from reading Dahui’s Shuzhuang. As demonstrated by this list of texts, Chinul did not take any particular sectarian position. He relied on the scholastic tradition of the Hwaŏm school as well as Sŏn, especially the brand of Sŏn that represented a “separate transmission outside the teaching.” Even though Chinul emphasized kanhwa meditation later in his career, it is not surprising that Chinul did not reject doctrinal teachings, considering that his spiritual experiences were all mediated through texts. In fact, Chinul was sympathetic to the Heze vision of the unity of Sŏn and Kyo. Although he knew that Shenhui had been branded as a “follower of intellectual knowledge and conceptual interpretation,” Chinul complimented him in the Chŏryo, the work that Chinul composed a year before his death in 1209.

Moguja [Chinul] said: Heze Shenhui was a master of our school known for his intellectual knowledge and conceptual interpretation. Although he was not the formal dharma successor to [Huineng], his awakened understanding was lofty and brilliant, and his discernment was clear.189

---

188 Kanhwa kyŏrŭi ron, HPC 4, 737b13-17.

189 Pŏchip pyŏhaengnok chŏryo pyŏngip sagi 法集別行錄節要井入私記 HPC 4,741a03-05; the translation is from Buswell 1983: 263.
Chinul clearly recognized the gap between the soteriologies of the two different visions of Sŏn: the “unity of Sŏn and Kyo” and the “separate transmission outside Kyo.” As will be seen in the next chapter, he took three different approaches to these diametrically opposite visions in three of his writings: the *Wŏndon sŏngbullon* 圓頓成佛論, the *Chŏryo*, and the *Kanhwa kyŏrūi ron* 看話決疑論. In the *Chŏryo*, Chinul introduced a model to unify these two soteriologies:

You must know that men who are cultivating the path in this present degenerate age of the dharma should first, via conceptual understanding, which accords with reality, discern clearly the mind’s true and false aspects, its arising and ceasing, and its essential and secondary features. Next, through a word, which splits nails and cuts through iron, you should probe closely and carefully. When a place appears at which your body can escape, it will be like the saying “to put a desk on the ground and have its four legs set firmly.” Whether coming out into birth or entering into death, you will have complete mastery of yourself.190

Chinul integrated the *kanhwa* (C. *kanhua*) technique into the Heze schema of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation.” He applied the technique in the process of “gradual cultivation,” which followed sudden initial insight. As revealed in the cases of Hyujŏng and Paekp’a, this model suggested Sŏn’s superiority to Kyo because it presumed that only the *kanhwa* practice could bring about final perfect enlightenment. Despite his subordination of Kyo to Sŏn, Chinul provided a balanced approach to Sŏn and Kyo to harmonize the Heze and Linji soteriologies in his *Chŏryo*.

---

190 Ibid., 766a01-06; the translation is from Buswell 1983: 338-339.
After Chinul’s death, Korean Sŏn Buddhism saw a short period of dominance by the Linji brand of Sŏn. This Korean version of “kyooe pyŏlchŏn” (separate transmission outside the teaching) was led by several Korean Sŏn monks who received the Chinese Linji transmission. One such Korean monk was T’aego Pou 太古普愚 (1301–1382). He traveled to China and received transmission from the Linji master Shiwu Qinggong 石屋清珙 (K. Sŏg’ok Ch’ŏnggong; 1272-1352) and came back to Korea in 1348. Pou advocated “kyooe pyŏlchŏn.” The record of his sayings repeatedly expresses Sŏn’s separation from the scriptural tradition. It quotes few scriptures and records his sermons, which employed such non-linguistic pedagogical tools as shouting and beating. It is also full of his guidance to help his students in their kanhwa practice.191 With the emergence of Sŏn masters such as Pou on the center of the Korean Sŏn stage, the vision of “kyooe pyŏlchŏn” and its kanhwa meditation technique dominated in late Koryŏ. However, as a new dynasty was founded on the Korean peninsula in 1392, Korean Sŏn Buddhism returned to Chinul’s Sŏn from this exclusivist Chinese import.192

3) Hyujŏng’s sagyo ipsŏn

Hyujŏng 休靜 (1520-1604) established “relinquishing Kyo and entering into Sŏn” as a dominant soteriology of Chosŏn Sŏn Buddhism. He presented this system as a way to shrink

---

191 *T’aego hwasang ŏrok* 太古和尚語錄, HPC 6, 669a01-702a26.

192 The king T’aejo 太祖 (r. 1392-1398), the founder of the Chosŏn dynasty, made the Sŏn community follow Chinul’s rules and regulations for Buddhist training at the request of a monk named Sangch’ŏng 尙聰 (d.u.); *Sejong taewang kinyŏm saŏphoe* 1972: 232.
the gap between Sŏn and Kyo. Hyujŏng believed in the unity of Sŏn and Kyo. Quoting Zongmi’s words in his Sŏn ’ga kwigam, Hyujŏng said the following:

The three places where the World Honored One transmitted the mind is the import of Sŏn. Everything that he said during his lifetime is the approach of Kyo. Therefore it is said, “Sŏn is the Buddha’s mind; Kyo is the Buddha’s words.”

Although he argued for the harmonious relationship between Sŏn and Kyo, however, Hyujŏng subordinated doctrinal teachings to Sŏn. In the Simpŏp yoch’o, he said,

Sŏn and Kyo arise from one thought. Where the mind-consciousness reaches belongs to the realm of cognition. This is Kyo. Where the mind-consciousness cannot reach belongs to the realm of the investigation [of the word]. This is Sŏn.

Hyujŏng made the same claim in the Sŏn ’ga kwigam. He said, “The unobstructed Dharma that the Buddha preached eventually returns to one taste. When all traces of this one taste are removed, the one mind that the patriarchs showed will be revealed” (佛說無碍之法 方歸一味).
As Buswell points out, for Hyjŏng, Kyo could only bring a student to “the threshold of awakening,” and only Sŏn meditation would carry him over that threshold to enlightenment.  

Hyujŏng’s recognition of the harmonious and yet subordinate relationship between Sŏn and Kyo led him to present the model of “relinquishing Kyo and entering into Sŏn” as an ideal soteriological model:

Students should first, via the verbalized teachings that accord with reality, scrutinize the two concepts of immutability and adaptability. These [two concepts correspond, respectively, to] the nature and characteristics of their own minds, and the two approaches of sudden awakening and gradual cultivation are the inception and consummation of their own training. Subsequently, casting aside doctrinal concepts, they merely take up the one thought that appears before their own minds and contemplate carefully the intent of Sŏn. They then will perforce gain attainment. This is called the living road to liberation.

Hyujŏng described the path of “relinquishing Kyo and entering into Sŏn” in the most definite fashion. According to him, in this model, a student was first engaged in doctrinal studies, which could give him sudden enlightenment (i.e., initial insight into the nature of enlightenment and cultivation); then he abandoned his attachment to doctrinal teachings and moved on to kanhwa meditation practice, which could lead him to the final enlightenment. Hyujŏng advocated “sagyo ipsŏn” as a soteriological regimen to resolve the tension between Sŏn and Kyo.

---

197 Sŏn’ga kwigam, HPC 7, 626c13-15.
199 Sŏn’ga kwigam, HPC 7, 627a2-6: the translation is from Buswell 1999:152-153.
With this system, he promoted the balanced practice of the two forms of Buddhism within the Heze schema of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation.”

4) The popularization of “sagyo ipsŏn” and the establishment of the monastic curriculum

As Hyujŏng’s lineage came to dominate the Chosŏn Buddhist community in the latter half of the dynasty, this system of “relinquishing Kyo and entering into Sŏn” became the standard soteriology of Korean Sŏn Buddhism. Several masters in Hyujŏng’s lineage such as Hŏbaek Myŏngjo 虚白明照 (1593-1661), P’ungdam Úisim 楓潭義諶 (1592-1665), Muyong Suyŏn 無用秀演 (1651-1719), and Chewŏl Kyŏnghŏn 霽月敬軒 (1544-1633) cultivated themselves and guided their students in accord with this system. In particular, the memorial inscription of Kyŏnghŏn recorded his application of this system in training his students. According to the record, Kyŏnghŏn taught his students first to lay the foundation for subsequent training using the teachings of Zongmi’s Duxu and Chinul’s Chŏryo, and then cultivate the kanhwa technique through the teachings of Gaofeng’s Chanyao 禪要 and Dahui’s Shuzhuang.

With the popularity of the system of sagyo ipsŏn, the interest in Zongmi and Chinul’s writings increased during this period. Several commentaries on these two masters’ major writings were published from the seventeenth to the nineteenth century. Many of these commentaries focused on Zongmi’s Duxu and Chinul’s Chŏryo, the texts that advocated the schema of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation.” Following are the examples:


201 Kyŏnghŏn taesa pimyŏng pyŏngsŏ 敬軒大師碑銘井序, Chosŏn pulgyo t’ongsa 朝鮮佛教通史 1, 490; re-quoted from Chongbŏm 1989: 102.
Sangbong Chŏngwŏn 霜峯浄源 (1627-1709):  
*Sŏnwŏn chejŏnjip tosŏ kwamun* 禪源諸詮集都序科文  
*Chŏryo sagi punkwa* 節要私記分科

Sŏr’am Ch’ubung 雪岩秋鵬 (1651-1706):  
*Sŏnwŏn chejŏnjip tosŏ kwap’yŏng* 禪源諸詮集都序科評  
*Pŏpchip pyŏrhaengnk chŏryo sagi* 法集別行錄節要私記

Hoeam Chŏnghye 晙庵定慧 (1685-1741):  
*Sŏnwŏn chip tosŏ ch’akpyŏng* 禪源集都序着柄  
*Pyŏrhaengnk sagi hwajok* 別行錄私記畫足  
*Pŏpchip pyŏrhaengnk chŏryo sagihae* 法集別行錄節要私記解

Yŏndam Yuil 蓮潭有一 (1720-1799):  
*Tosŏ kwamok pyŏngip sagi* 都序科目幷入私記  
*Pŏpchip pyŏrhaengnk chŏryo kwamok pyŏngip sagi* 法集別行錄節要科目幷入私記

The system of “relinquishing Kyo and entering into Sŏn” was institutionalized in late Chosŏn as monks in Hyjong’s lineage established the monastic curriculum. The earliest extant record of the curriculum was Hyujŏng’s disciple Yŏngwŏl Ch’ŏnghak’s 詠月淸學 (1570-1654)  
*Sajip sagyo chŏngdŭng yŏmsong hwaŏm* 四集四敎傳燈拈頌華嚴. The record divided the curriculum into three courses: (1) Fourfold Collection Course (*sajip kwa* 四集科); (2) Four Teachings Course (*sagyo kwa* 四敎科); and (3) Great Teachings Course (*taegyo kwa* 大敎科). The texts for these courses are as follows.

In the first, the Fourfold Collection Course, students read the four major texts of the Heze and Linji schools: Zongmi’s *Duxu*, Chinul’s *Chŏryo*, Gaofeng Yuanmiao’s *Chanyao*, and Dahui’s *Shuzhuang*. The second, the Four Teachings Course, taught the four cardinal scriptures of the Sino-Korean doctrinal tradition: the *Yuanjue jing* 圓覺經 (K. *Wŏn’gak kyŏng*), the *Vajracchedikāprajñāpāramitā-sūtra* (C. *Jingang jing*, K. *Kūmgang kyŏng* 金剛經), the *Śūraṃgama-sūtra* (C. *Lengyan jing*, K. *Nŭngŏm kyŏng* 楞嚴經), and the *Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-ṃśraṇīya-sūtra* (C. *Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-ṃśraṇīya-sūtra*).  

---

202 HPC 8, 234b17-235b04; Kim 2008: 132.
sūtra (C. Fahua jing, K. Pŏphwa kyŏng  法華經). The third, the Great Teachings Course, covered the Hwaŏm kyŏng (C. Huayan jing  華嚴經) and the two large collections of the Chan lineages and gong’an episodes, the Kyŏngdŏk chŏndŭng nok (C. Jingde chuandeng lu 景德傳燈錄) and Hyesim’s Sŏnmun yŏmsong 禪門拈頌.203

The curriculum was characterized by its promotion of the harmony of Sŏn and Kyo. The three courses included some seminal texts of both Chan/Sŏn and Jiao/Kyo traditions. In particular, the Fourfold Collection Course, which was probably established first among the three, indicated the synthesis of the two Chan/Sŏn soteriologies: the list of the texts in the course suggests that the course was built on the soteriological model of “relinquishing Kyo and entering into Sŏn.” With the establishment of this curriculum, Chosŏn Sŏn practice was firmly founded on the model of “sagyo ipsŏn,” in which the Linji kanhua technique was integrated into the Heze path of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation.”

4. Concluding Remarks

The establishment of “relinquishing Kyo and entering into Sŏn” as the dominant soteriological model in late Chosŏn created a couple of problems with regard to the issue of Korean Sŏn identity. This model recognized both Sŏn and Kyo as the necessary elements of Sŏn soteriology and thus advocated the harmonious relationship between these two forms of Buddhism. However, Chosŏn Sŏn Buddhism defined its genealogical identity as the Imje (C. Linji) school by establishing T’aego Pou as the ancestor of the Korean Sŏn lineage. Chosŏn Sŏn Buddhism, therefore, employed two diametrically opposite brands of Sŏn in defining its

203 Publication of the texts in the curriculum, especially the four texts of the Four-fold Collection Course, had increased since early 17th century.
identity: it became a tradition that was genealogically Imje and soteriologically Hat’aek (C. Heze).

This “sagyo ipsŏn” system still limited the validity of Kyo in bringing about enlightenment even though it presented a balanced approach to Sŏn and Kyo. In this system, Kyo was considered necessary but preparatory because it was unable to achieve final perfect enlightenment on its own. As the monastic curriculum was established in late Chosŏn, this notion of Kyo subordination to Sŏn became the dominant and near-official view in the Chosŏn Buddhist community. This subordinate position of Kyo in Korean Sŏn soteriology inevitably generated tension with the Confucian literati’s intellectual approach to Buddhism in late Chosŏn.

Paekp’a and Ch’o’ŭi attempted to resolve these issues by establishing their own taxonomies, in which they presented their different views on the relationship between Sŏn and doctrinal studies. In doing so, Paekp’a focused more on the first issue while Ch’o’ŭi focused more on the second.
Both Paekp’a and Ch’oŭi looked to Linji’s teaching of “the three statements, the three mysteries, and the three essentials” to legitimize the taxonomies through which they sought to embody their different visions of the Sŏn and Kyo relationship within the Korean Sŏn tradition. This chapter will examine how previous Chinese and Korean masters interpreted Linji’s teaching in terms of the relationship between Chan/ Sŏn and the doctrinal teachings as well as how their interpretations influenced the taxonomies of Paekp’a and Ch’oŭi.

As shown in chapter two, the tension between Chan/ Sŏn and the doctrinal teachings (Jiao/ Kyo) revolved around the issue of the relationship between language and enlightenment, which could be encapsulated in the following question: whether a certain style of rhetoric is connected exclusively to a certain mode of experience of reality, or more specifically how the descriptive doctrinal language and the non-descriptive Chan/ Sŏn language are related to the experience of enlightenment. There was no unified view on this issue. Chan and Sŏn schools bifurcated largely into two different groups regarding the issue: One claimed that the doctrinal teachings were inferior to Chan/ Sŏn because the conceptual descriptions of the doctrinal teachings produced only intellectual understanding while non-conceptual Chan/ Sŏn rhetoric led directly to enlightenment; the other argued that Chan/ Sŏn and the doctrinal teachings were not different from each other because either of their rhetorical styles could equally lead to either enlightenment or delusion whether the rhetoric is conceptual or non-conceptual.

From the eleventh century when there was a movement to establish Chan and Sŏn as a tradition independent from the scriptural tradition, some Chinese and Korean masters turned to
an emblematic teaching of the eminent Tang Chan master LinjiYixuan 臨濟義玄 (d.867) to justify their positions on this age-old issue. Linji, the characteristic figure of the unconventional and iconoclastic branch of Chan and Sŏn, is reputed to have taught the so-called “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials” (sanju sanxuan sanyao 三句三玄三要) or simply “three mysteries and three essentials.”

Despite the retrospectively drawn image of Linji, this teaching appears rather theoretical though almost as incomprehensible as his other instructions, typified by such an unconventional and non-linguistic style as shouting and beating.

Since its first appearance in the Jingde Chuandeng lu 景德傳燈錄 in 1009, the teaching had become well-known within the Chan and Sŏn community, and was recorded in various texts. Despite its ambiguity, a few of the Sino-Korean masters deployed this teaching to develop a Chan and Sŏn principle of language: the Chinese masters Fenyang Shanzhao 汾陽善昭 (947-1024), Jianfu Chenggu 鷹福承古 (970-1045), and Juefan Huihong 覺範惠洪 (1071-1128) and the Korean masters Pojo Chinul 普照知訥 (1158–1210) and Chinjŏng Ch‘ŏnch’aek 眞靜天頃 (fl. 13th century) were such masters. They discussed Linji’s teaching in relation to the above-mentioned question, along with the related question of the teaching’s

---

204 There are several Buddhist texts that record Linji’s acts and words. To name a few, the Zongjing lu 98 (compiled in 961) T2016.48.943c08-24, the Song Gaoseng chuan 12 (988) T2061.50.779a26-b05, the Chuanfa zhengzong ji 7 (1061) T2078.51.753c27-754a29, the Jianzhong jingguo xudenglu 1 (1101) X1556.78.646a13-a16, the Rentian yannu 1 (1188) T2006.48.300a25-306c05, the Liandeng huiyao 9 (1189) X1557.79.81a05-90a22, the Wudeng huiyuan 11 (1252) X1565.80.220c08-223b04, the Wujia zhengzong zan 2 (1254) X1554.78.584c06-585b03, the Fozu lidai tognzai 17 (1333) T2036.49.643b04-c21, the Chanzong zhengpai 6 (1489) X1593.85.461a07-463a15, the Zhiyue lu 14 (1602) X1578.83.549b21-563b01, the Wudeng yantong 11 (1653) X1569.81.24c08-27b04, the Wudeng quanshu 21 (1693) X1571.81.599c18-602b23.

205 According to Powell, Linji gives more emphasis on traditional doctrines than Dongshan; Linji also favors a lecture setting for educating students over such unconventional settings as a work place favored by Dongshan. For details of comparison and contrast between the Dongshan yulu and the Linji lu, see Powell 1982: 114-148.
universality. In their discussions, they provided their own interpretations of the teaching based on their positions regarding these questions.

In this chapter, I will explore these masters’ interpretations of Linji’s teaching. I will first deal with the Chinese discourse that laid the foundation for their further explorations of Linji’s teaching and then turn to the Korean interpretations, which provided more comprehensive perspectives on the teaching and had more direct influence on the nineteenth century Korean Sŏn debate.

1. Linji’s Teaching of “Three Statements, Three Mysteries, and Three Essentials”

Linji’s teaching of “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials” is related to his following dharma hall sermons.

① The master took the high seat in the hall.
A monk asked, “What about the First Statement?” The master said:
The seal of the three essentials being lifted, the vermillion impression is sharp;
With no room for speculation, host and guest are clear and distinct.
“What about the Second Statement?” The master said:
How could Miaojie permit Wuzhuo’s questioning?
How could expedient means go against the activity that cuts through the stream?
“What about the Third Statement?” The master said:
Look at the wooden puppets performing on the stage!
Their jumps and jerks all depend upon the person behind.
The master further said, “Each Statement must comprise the Gates of the Three Mysteries, and the gate of each Mystery must comprise the Three Essentials. There are expedients and there is functioning. How do all of you understand this?”
The master then stepped down from his seat.206

206 Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao Chanshi yulu 鎮州臨濟慧照禪師語錄: T1985.47.497a15-21. The translation is quoted from Sasaki 2009: 144-148. This sermon is not included in all the Linji lu texts available in the Song period. A few Chan works of this time record the Linji lu texts with small variations, which became the sources of the later versions: (1) the Zutang ji, compiled in 952; (2) the Jingde Chuandeng lu (Record of the Transmission of the Lamp compiled in the Jingde era) in 1009; (3) The Tiansheng Guangdeng lu (Expanded Lamp Record compiled in the Tiansheng era) in 1029; (4) the Sijia yulu (Records of Sayings of Four Masters) in 1085; (5) the Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao Chanshi yulu (Recorded Sayings of Chan Master Linji Huizhao of Zhenzhou) in 1120. The sermon ① is recorded
上堂 师问 问如何是第一句 师云三要印开朱点侧 未容拟议主宾分
问如何是第二句 师云 妙解豈容无著问 湫和爭负截流機
问如何是第三句 师云 看取棚头弄傀儡 抽牵都未著人 师又云
一句語須具三玄門 一玄門須具三要 有權有用 人等諸人作麼生會 下座。

② Someone asked “What about the true Buddha, the true dharma, and the true Way? We beg of you to disclose this for us.”
The master said,
“Buddha is the mind’s purity; Dharma is the mind’s radiance; the Way is the pure light pervading everywhere without hindrance. The three are one, yet all are empty names and have no real existence. With the true man of the Way, moment after moment his mind is not interrupted. From the time the great teacher Bodhidharma came from the Western Land, he just sought a person who would not accept the deluded views of others. Later, he met the Second Patriarch, who, having understood [Bodhidharma’s] one word, for the first time realized that hitherto he had been futilely engaged in striving. As for my understanding today, it’s no different from that of the patriarch-buddhas. He who attains at the First Statement becomes a teacher along with patriarch-buddhas; he who attains at the Second Statement becomes the teacher of men and gods; he who attains at the Third Statement cannot save even himself.”

Without any commentarial help, construing the meaning of Linji’s teaching of “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials,” like all gong’an cases, is difficult. The ambiguity of Linji’s original teaching inevitably led to a few different interpretations.

only in the Linji lu versions within the Chuandeng lu and the Linji Chanshi yulu while never mentioned both in the Zutang ji and the Sijia yulu versions. The Guangdeng lu does not record the sermon in the section for Linji, but in that for Fengxue Yanzhao风穴延沼 (896-973).

207 Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao Chanshi yulu T1985.47.501c28-502a07. The translation is quoted with small changes (in italic) from Sasaki 2009: 264. This sermon is included in the Linjilu versions from the Guangdeng lu, the Linji chanshi yulu, and the Sijia yulu with little variations. The Linji chanshi yulu, compiled in 1085, is the earlist text which contains both sermons on the teaching of “three statements, three mysteries and three essentials.” Both above-quoted sermons, however, were probably well-known within the Linji lineage, if not within the entire Chan community, around the compilation of the Guangdeng lu in 1039.
2. Discussion on Linji’s Teaching in China

1) Fenyang Shanzhao

The fourth-generation Linji master Fenyang Shanzhao 汾陽善昭 (947-1024) is the first in Chan history to deal with Linji’s teaching of “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials.” Fenyang, well-known for his Songgu daibie 頌古代別, the first gong’an collection, made poetic comments to the teaching, reflecting the spirit of the “literary-Chan” style that prevailed in the Song Chan community. In his comments, recorded in the *Fenyang wude chanshi yulu* 汾陽無德禪師語錄 and the *Rentian yanmu* 人天眼目 without significant variations, he showed that Linji’s teaching related to the Chan view of language. The two texts provide Fenyang’s comment to each of the mysteries and the essentials, though they offer no explanation for his omission of the three statements. Below are Fenyang’s comments from the *Rentian yanmu*, the six-fascicle text compiled by Huian Zhizhao 晦庵智昭 (fl. 12th century) in 1188.

Later, the master Fenyang raised the old case, asking,
“What are the phrases of three mysteries and three essentials?
A monk asked, “What is the first mystery?”
The master answered,
“[The Buddha] directly entrusted [his dharma] to Drinker of Light [i.e. Kāśyapa].”…
A monk asked, “What is the second mystery?”
The master answered,
“Severing characteristics and departing from words and sentences.”…
A monk asked, “What is the third mystery?”
The master answered, “A bright mirror illuminates impartially.”

[208 Rentian yanmu 1, T2006.48.302a03-09: Fenyang wude chanshi yulu 1, T1992.47.603b02-04.]

後來汾陽昭和尚 因舉前話乃云 那箇是三玄三要底句 僧問如何是第一玄 汾陽云親囑飲光前…如何是第二玄 汾云絕相離言詮…如何是第三玄 汾云明鏡照無偏.

[A monk asked,] “What is the first essential?”
The master answered, “There is no fabrication in words.”…
[A monk asked,] “What is the second essential?”
The master answered, “A thousand sages enter into the mysterious and profound.”…

[A monk asked,] “What is the third essential?”
The master answered, “Outside the tetralemma and a hundred negations, one fully treads the path of Hanshan.”

Fenyang appears to treat Linji’s teaching as one of the gong’an cases: he raised the old case of Linji’s teaching to test his students. Then, without any proper response from the students, he presented his verse-comments to demonstrate his spiritual authority and show his understanding of the teaching, an understanding probably regarded as equivalent to Linji’s. As such, Fenyang’s comments on the three mysteries and the three essentials are as cryptic as Linji’s original case. We can hardly understand what his comments really mean. Even though we might guess the meanings of some of the verses, our speculations raise more questions than answers. For example, Fenyang’s comment on the first mystery, “the Buddha directly entrusted [his dharma] to Drinker of Light,” could be interpreted as describing the fact that the truth is ineffable and thus can be attained and transmitted only through direct insight beyond the purview of language. However, determining whether such an interpretation is correct or why such a comment is applied to the first mystery rather than any other mystery or essential is difficult.

Furthermore, Fenyang’s two other comments seem to carry a similar implication: to the second mystery, “severing characteristics and departing from words and statements,” and to the third essential, “Outside the tetralemma and a hundred negations, one fully treads the path Hanshan.”

We could not know for sure whether Fenyang’s three comments mean that the first mystery, the

209 Rentian yanmu 1, T2006.48.302a11-16: Fenyang wude chanshi yulu 1, T1992.47.603b12-15. Here, the exact meaning of “Hanshan” (寒山) is uncertain. It could refer to the legendary Zen poet Hanshan during the Tang dynasty; it might also generically refer to cold mountains.
second mystery, and the third essential all refer to the inadequacy of language; neither can we know how they might be different if they have different meanings. This uncertainty might be intentional. Fenyang might have composed his verse-comments to Linji’s teaching not only to show his understanding but also to deny a theoretical and conceptual approach to the teaching.

However, despite the lack of any conceptual account, Fenyang’s comments reveal that Linji’s teaching is connected to the Chan view of language. As mentioned above, some, if not all, of Fenyang’s comments indicate the inadequacy of language to describe reality as it is. Another of his verse-comments, more famous later within Chan circles, even addresses a more complex Chan view of language beyond simple negation:

The matters of the three mysteries and the three essentials are difficult to discern; One who is able to get the meaning and forgets the words is easily intimate with the Way; One statement brightly illuminates all the myriad forms; On the ninth day of Chongyang [festival] the chrysanthemums’ blossoms are new.210

三玄三要事難分 得意忘言道易親 一句明明該萬象 重陽九日菊花新.

Fenyang suggested that the teaching embodied Chan recognition of the two opposite aspects of language. Citing from the Zhuangzi in the second line, he expressed the fundamental inadequacy of language as a medium for expressing reality as suchness.211 He announced that language was inadequate or insufficient for attaining the Way. However, immediately

---

210 Rentian yanmu 1, T2006.48.302b01-02: Fenyang wude chanshi yulu 1, T1992.47.597b07-08. This verse-comment is also recorded in the Linji zongzhi (X1234.63.168a4-5). The translation is quoted from Keyworth 2001: 172-173 with small changes (in Italics).

211 The phrase “one who gets the meaning and forgets the words” (deyi wangyan 得意忘言) is from the Zhuangzi 26.
afterward, in the third line, Fenyang turned to the affirmation of language, claiming that language could fully manifest the reality of the phenomenal realm.

Even though his comments do not provide much to help in understanding Linji’s teaching, Fenyang showed that the teaching related to the Chan recognition of the dual nature of language, which conceals and discloses reality simultaneously.

2) Jianfu Chenggu

The second-generation Yunmen master Jianfu Chenggu 薦福承古 (970-1045) took a more conceptual approach to Linji’s teaching, focusing particularly on the three mysteries, which he believed were shared by all Buddhist traditions. He looked at the teaching through the lens of the hierarchical relationship between Chan and Jiao on the basis of their different rhetorical styles.

Chenggu supposed three different levels in the linguistic and non-linguistic expressions used within Chan circles. Each level of expressions corresponds to a specific style of the Chan and doctrinal rhetoric. He correlated these three levels of expressions to the three mysteries, which he designated for the first time in Chan history as the “mystery in the essence” (tizhongxuan 體中玄), the “mystery in the word” (juzhongxuan 句中玄), and the “mystery in the mystery” (xuanzhongxuan 玄中玄). According to him, these three mysteries constitute the three sequential soteriological stages from the first through the second to the third mystery.

Chenggu claimed that the “mystery in the essence” referred to the expressions based on such doctrinal theories as mind-only (weixin 唯心), consciousness-only (weishi 唯識), and tathāgatagarbha. In particular, the expressions that are reminiscent of the Huayan teaching of
“non-obstructed interpenetration of myriad phenomena” (shishi wuai 事事無礙) characterize this first mystery. Chenggu gave the following examples:

(1) Shuiliao, after being kicked and knocked down by Mazu, stood up and said, “On the tip of a hair, I’ve understood the source of myriad forms and hundred thousands of wondrous meanings;”

(2) A monk asked Zhaozhou, “What is the self of a student of the Way?” Zhaozhou answered, “Mountains, streams, and the earth.”

Cheggu called these descriptions “words that wrapp up the gist [of the doctrines]” (C. hetou yu, K. Haptu ḍ 合頭語). According to him, these descriptions are of only secondary importance in the Buddhist soteriological path: they might help the sentient beings receive favorable rebirths in saṃsāra by removing evil behavior but fail to release them from the endless cycle of birth-and-death and thus not lead to enlightenment. For, as Chenggu explained, people who only understand the mystery in the essence are trapped in a dualistic mode of thinking: such people retain their own sense of right and wrong so that they want each and every statement to correspond to the teachings of the three vehicles and properly carry the Huayan principle of interpenetration. If a statement does so, they regard it as perfect; if not, they dismiss it as partial. According to Chenggu, because the mystery in the essence is a description that binds one to words and letters, other types of words are necessary to overcome such tendency.

For Chenggu, the mystery in the word refers to types of words that help remove dualistic thinking. He referred to this second mystery as words with few doctrinal concepts, thus more

---

212 Chanlin sengbao chuan12, X1560.79.516b16-18.

213 Ibid., X1560.79.516b19.

214 Ibid., X1560.79.517a09-13.
direct expressions to the truth. The following are the few examples Chenggu presented for this second mystery:

(1) A monk asked Qingyuan Xingsi, “What is the ultimate meaning of the Buddha-Dharma?” Qingyuan answered, “How much is rice in Luling?”
(2) A monk asked Zhaozhou, “I have heard that you have personally seen Nanquan. Is this true or not?” [The master] answered, “Zhenzhou produces big radishes.”
(3) A monk asked Yunmen, “What is talk that goes beyond Buddhas and patriarchs?” [The master] answered, “A pancake;”

Chenggu called these expressions “no-response words” (buda hua 不答話) because a Chan master gave no direct answer to his student’s question, intentionally replying with an irrelevant answer. Such words are intended to help a student escape from the cage of concepts just as one “removes nails and wedges so that [a bird] could escape from a cage” (去釘楔脫籠頭).

Chenggu asserted that this type of language still can not lead to enlightenment because it does not remove all conceptual defilements, even though it is less reliant on concepts than the mystery in the essence. However, in Chenggu’s view, this second mystery might be more harmful than the first mystery, for the mystery in the word could threaten the very existence of Chan. He argued that the Chan way of teaching was withering because this type of words was so widespread within Chan community, in particular, within the Linji and the Yunmen schools.

---

215 Chanlin sengbao chuan 12, X1560.79.516c14-18.
216 Ibid., X1560.79.516c22-23.
217 Ibid., X1560.79.516c20.
218 Ibid., X1560.79.516c23 and X1560.79.517a13-a15.
Chenggu criticized the Chan masters of both schools as being satisfied with the mystery in the word, and thus still entrapped by words. Chenggu’s first two types of mysteries, therefore, do not overcome the harmful effects of language. According to Chenggu, one needs another type of expression to remove all traces of language in order to reach enlightenment.

The third and final type of mystery Chenggu called the mystery in the mystery. He considered this third mystery to be non-linguistic expressions, such as shouting, beating, and silence. Chenggu offered the following examples:

(1) A non-Buddhist asked the Buddha, “I do not ask about words, I do not ask about wordlessness.” The World-Honored One remained silent. The non-Buddhist said, “The World-Honored One in his great compassion enabled me to gain entrance into [Enlightenment] by opening the clouds of my delusion.”
(2) Linji asked Huangbo, “What is the great meaning of the Buddhadharma?” [Linji] asked three times and was hit [by Huangbo] three times.219

For Chenggu, the mystery in the mystery directly reveals the truth without the medium of language, overcomes all defilements originating from one’s attachment to language, and thus leads to enlightenment.

Chenggu set up the sequential stages of a spiritual path in which one approaches genuine spiritual realization of the truth by advancing from the mystery in the essence through the mystery in the word to the mystery in the mystery. In this schema, the first mystery corresponds to Jiao and the second and the third to Chan, as shown in Chenggu’s following remark.

The words, phrases, and dharma-teachings of all the Buddhas of past, present, and future derive from the mystery in the essence; the words, phrases, and dharma-teachings of all the patriarchs of past, present, and future derive from the mystery in the word; the

219 Ibid., X1560.79.517a01-03 and X1560.79.517a06.
Hence, Chenggu’s sequential scheme for the three mysteries suggests Chan superiority over Jiao: Jiao guides adepts to enter into the path to enlightenment but produces conceptual defilements that hinder enlightenment, while Chan leads directly to the genuine spiritual goal by removing such defilements.

Chenggu elsewhere made one important remark in relation to the universality of the teaching of the three mysteries:

This Dharma-gate of the three mysteries is the Buddhas’ insight (jñāna-darśana). All the Buddhas liberate sentient beings within the Dharma-realms and help them attain enlightenment through this Dharma-gate. People of nowadays rather say that the three mysteries are the style of the Linji school (jiafeng). This is wrong!  

Here, Chenggu argued that the three mysteries are the universal teaching, not exclusively belonging to the Linji school, because they are the soteriological tool employed by all the Buddhas, and probably by extension, all enlightened masters. For him, to start with Jiao and continue with Chan is the universal path to enlightenment. Hence, the three mysteries that represent this path should also be universal.

Chenggu’s naming of the three mysteries in terms of essence, word, and mystery was generally accepted within the Chan and Sŏn community, whether or not others agreed with his correlation of specific rhetoric to each of the mysteries. However, his subjugation of Jiao to

---

220 Ibid., X1560.79.517b18-20.
221 Ibid., X1560.79.516a22-a24.
Chan as well as his denial of Linji’s exclusive association with the mysteries is severely criticized by Huihong, the second-generation master of the Huanglong branch of the Linji school.

3) Juefan Huihong

The Linji master Juefan Huihong 覺範惠洪 (1071-1128) treated Linji’s teaching in a few of his writings such as the Zhizheng chuan 智證傳, the Linji zongzhi 臨濟宗旨, the Linjian lu 林間錄, and the Chanlin sengbao chuan 禪林僧寶傳. In these writings, he focused mainly on criticizing Chenggu’s analysis of the teaching rather than providing his own account. However, Huihong’s criticism reveals his view on the relationship between Chan and Jiao, even though it is far from systematic and sometimes even self-contradictory.

One of Huihong’s main criticisms of Chenggu’s accounts for the teaching is related to Chenggu’s hierarchical view of Chan and Jiao. Huihong criticized Chenggu as follows:

[When I] look at [Chenggu’s] establishment of the three mysteries, [he] divides [the mysteries] into the essence, the word, and the mystery. When he comes to talk about the three essentials, he does not analyze them; he rather scolds students for falling into intellectual views and of being unable to realize the Way. However, when he interprets the phrase, “a statement comprises [the three mysteries and] the three essentials,” he rather quotes the meanings from the Vajracchedikāprajñāpāramitā-sūtra, the Śūraṅgama-sūtra, the Vimalakīrtinirdeśa-sūtra, etc, and says, “Nature and Principle are limitless; phenomena and forms are limitless; they are put together but not mixed. They are mixed but not the same…” How could “speaking of principle” and “speaking of phenomena” not be intellectual views? Since the vehicle of Jiao already has these meanings, why is there a need to establish a school (zongmen) again? Since Chenggu’s pride goes above people, he disparaged the vehicle of Jiao as intellectual views.222

見立三玄 則分以為體中為句中為玄中 至言三要則獨不分辯乎 方譏呵學者 溺於知見 不能悟道 及釋一句之中具三要則 反引金剛首楞嚴維摩等義證成曰 性理無邊 事相無邊 參而不雜混而不一...夫敘理敘事 豈非知見乎 且教乘既具此則 安用復立宗門 古以氣蓋人則毁教乘為知見。

222 Chanlin sengbao chuan 12, X1560.79.517c15-21.
Huihong’s criticism of Chenggu is in fact two-fold. He first criticized Chenggu as self-contradictory because Chenggu employed doctrinal teachings for the three essentials to which Chenggu himself argued intellectual views should never be applied. The more serious reason for Huihong’s criticism of Chenggu is that Chenggu subjugated Jiao to Chan. As seen before, Chenggu regarded the mystery in the essence, which could correspond to Jiao, as the lowest level of the three mysteries because it gives rise to conceptual defilements, which eventually should be removed by such Chan expressions as the mystery in the word and the mystery in the mystery. Such a subjugative position for Jiao is problematic to Huihong, who advocated the unity of Chan and Jiao. Even though Huihong was a zealous advocate of literary Chan, he emphasized the continuity of Chan and the scholastic traditions. Huihong even argued that the Chinese patriarchs relied on the scriptural teachings just as had the Indian patriarchs and that “not positing written words” and “special transmission outside the teachings” would not be the way of the patriarchs. From this vantage point, Huihong condemned Chenggu’s analysis as seriously defective, which derives from ignorance and hubris.

Another of Huihong’s criticisms of Chenggu’s account of Linji’s teaching focuses on Chenggu’s denial of this teaching’s exclusive association with the Linji school. In fact, Huihong is somewhat ambiguous and even self-contradictory on this issue. On the one hand, Huihong argued that “the three mysteries and the three essentials” were Linji’s teaching, which distinguished the Linji school from the rest of the Chan schools. In the Linji zongzhi and the Chanlin sengbao chuan, he accused Chenggu of arguing without foundation that the teaching of

---

223 Keyworth 2001: 292

224 Despite such his criticism of Chenggu, Huihong used Chenggu’s names for the three mysteries except for the third mystery, which Huihong called the “mystery in the meaning” (yizhong xuan 意中玄), instead of the “mystery in the mystery.”
the three mysteries did not belong to the Linji school. According to Huihong, Chenggu denied the Linji school’s exclusive claim for the teaching because Chenggu mistakenly correlated it with the teaching of Xuansha Shibei 玄沙師備 (835-908), a monk who is not affiliated with the Linji school.²²⁵ Huihong went on to say that such Chenggu’s account should be condemned as wrong.²²⁶ On the other hand, Huihong argued the opposite. In the Linjian lu, he claimed that Linji was not the only master to teach the three mysteries and the three essentials. According to Huihong, Shitou Xiqian 石頭希遷 (700-790) also taught them, employing the different set of terms “brightness” (ming 明) and “darkness” (an 暗) for the “mystery” and the “essential,” respectively.²²⁷ Since Shitou is the master to whom schools other than the Linji traced back their lineages, Huihong’s remark in the Linjiann lu implies that the other Chan schools share the teaching of the three mysteries and the three essentials. Such Huihong’s apparent inconsistency in this issue damages the credibility of his views on the three mysteries. In fact, the early Qing

²²⁵ Linji zongzhi X1234.63.168c03; Chanlin sengbao chuan 12 X1560.79.517c7-8. In the Linji zongzhi, Chenggu’s three mysteries correspond to the three phrases of Xuansha Shibei whose dharma son is Fayan Wenyi 法眼文益 (885-958), the alleged founder of the Fayan school. Xuansha’s three phrases in the Linji zongzhi are excerpted from the Chanlin sengbao chuan 4 X1560.79.499c19-500a12. Huihong’s analyses of Xuansha’s three phrases in relation to Chenggu’s three mysteries are different in the Linji zongzhi and in the Linjian lu. In the Linji zongzhi, Huihong correlates the first, the second, and the third mysteries to Xuansha’s third, first, and second phrases, respectively. However, in the Linjian lu, he only employs Xuansha’s first phrase to explain the third line of Fenyang’s famous verse-comment for Linji’s teaching, the line which Chenggu connects to the first mystery. For Huihong’s analysis of Xuansha’s three phrases in relation to the three mysteries in the Linji zongzhi, see the Linji zongzhi X1234.63.168c05-13. For Huihong’s explanations of Fenyang’s verse-comment in the Linjian lu, see Linjian lu 3 X1624.87.263c13-c19.

²²⁶ Linji zongzhi X1234.63.168c04.

²²⁷ According to Huihong, such a set of brightness-darkness appears in Shitou’s Cantong qi 參同契. For Huihong’s comparison of the mystery and the essential to Shitou’s brightness and darkness, see Linjian lu 3 X1624.87.263b20-c04.
Caodong master Yongjue Yuanxian 永覺元賢 (1578-1657) severely attacked and dismissed Huihong’s accounts of the three mysteries and the three essentials as disrupting the Way.\(^{228}\)

Although Huihong provided little systematic explanation of Linji’s teaching, his criticism of Chenggu’s subjugation of Jiao to Chan reveals his vision that Chan and Jiao are equivalent to each other.

3. Discussion on Linji’s Teaching in Korea

1) Pojo Chinul

Pojo Chinul (1158–1210) regarded Chenggu’s analysis for the three mysteries as an independent soteriological schema by rejecting its relevance to Linji’s teaching. Chinul accepted Chenggu’s interpretation of the three mysteries as sequential stages along the path to enlightenment and brought another factor into consideration: he looked at this schema of the three mysteries in relation to kanhwa Sŏn practice. As shown in chapter two, Chinul was rather ambiguous in his treatment of the kanhwa technique: he placed the technique within his soteriological scheme of “sudden enlightenment/gradual cultivation” in the Exerpts while treating it as a special technique separate from this schema in the Kanhwa kyŏrŭi ron. Such ambiguity of the position of the kanhwa technique in Chinul’s soteriology certainly affects his analysis of the three mysteries. In fact, he presented three different configurations for the three mysteries and kanhwa Sŏn, each of which is outlined in the Wŏndon sŏngbullon, the Chŏryo, and the Kanhwa kyŏrŭi ron.\(^{229}\)

---

\(^{228}\) Sanxuan kao (Inquiry into the Three Mysteries 三玄考), Yongjue heshang guanglu 16 X1437.72.480b02-04.

\(^{229}\) Chŏng Yong-sik also argues that though Chinul was influenced by Chenggu in explaining the three mysteries, Chinul’s analysis is different from Chenggu’s because Chinul included kanhwa practice in his
Chinul explained the three mysteries without mentioning kanhwa Sŏn in the Wŏndon sŏngbullon, published posthumously. Although he accepted most of Chenggu’s account of the three mysteries, Chinul revealed one significant difference. He denied the connection between Chenggu’s accounts for the three mysteries and Linji’s three mysteries.\(^{230}\)

In Sŏn, there are three mysterious gates: first, the mystery in the essence; second, the mystery in the word; third, the mystery in the mystery. The mystery in the essence is the approach to dharma which demonstrates the unimpeded interpenetration of all phenomena…It is a preliminary approach for inducing an awakening in those of beginning potential. Since this approach has not yet abandoned understanding based on the verbal teachings, the mystery in the word is employed. These words have no traces, are ordinary, have a cleansing effect, and eliminate grasping so that students can suddenly forget their conceptual understanding and knowledge of the Buddha-dharma. But since this approach also involves cleansing knowledge and vision and cleansing words and phrases, the mystery – the use of pauses, silence, the staff, and the Sŏn shout – is also employed in training. When this last approach is used, one can suddenly forget the cleansing knowledge and vision and the cleansing words and phrases of the second mysterious gate…This is called the sudden realization of the dharmadhātu. (Even though the three mysteries here are not Linji’s original intent, I have nevertheless elucidated them following the intent of the master Chenggu.) [Italics mine]\(^{231}\)

分析了玄的玄門，但只涉及Chinul对于玄的玄門的解释，而没有涉及Chinul对于玄的玄門的解释。然而，Ch’ong只涉及Chinul对于玄的玄門的解释。然而，Ch’ong仍然认为Chinul的解释是玄的玄門的解释，这在Chinul的解释中是被揭示的。见Ch’ong Yong-sik 2009: 21-29.

\(^{230}\) Ch’ong admits that Chinul denied the relevance of Chenggu’s accounts to Linji’s three mysteries. However, Ch’ong still correlates Chinul’s analysis to Linji’s three mysteries. See, ibid: 21-31.

\(^{231}\) Wŏndon sŏngbullon, HPC 4, 728b16-c3: translation is quoted from Buswell 1983: 214, except the italic portion. In the text Buswell used for his translation, this interlinear note does not appear.
Chinul’s explanation of the three mysteries is identical to Chenggu’s. Chinul regarded the three mysteries as a process in which one begins his Buddhist practice with the doctrinal understanding and subsequently turns to more Sŏn style of practices to remove conceptual defilements and to attain enlightenment. More importantly, however, in the Wŏndon sŏngbullon, he asserted that Chenggu’s account of the three mysteries is not Linji’s original intent even though Chenggu presented his accounts as explaining Linji’s three mysteries. Hence, Chinul pointed out that Chenggu must have misunderstood Linji’s three mysteries as the Qing master Yuanxian criticized Chenggu. Since Chinul provided no explanation for Linji’s three mysteries in any of his writings, it is impossible to know how Chinul understood Linji’s three mysteries. In the Wŏndon sŏngbullon, Chinul categorically stated that his account of the three mysteries was based on that of Chenggu, not Linji’s original teaching.

(2) Chŏryo

Chinul presented his unique interpretation of the three mysteries in the Chŏryo, the interpretation that was later connected by Paekp’a to Linji’s teaching. In the Chŏryo, Chinul integrated the kanhwa technique into the three mysteries, laying out his soteriological path.

Chinul regarded the mystery in the essence as a preliminary and yet necessary stage in this path. According to Chinul, conceptual understanding, acquired through the mystery in the essence, enables one to “discern clearly the mind’s true and false aspects, its arising and ceasing, and its essential and secondary features” 決擇自心真妄生死本末了然. Even though a

---

232 Yuanxian criticized both Chenggu and Huihong of misunderstanding Linji’s three mysteries. For Yuanxian’s criticism of Chenggu and Huihong’s accounts for the mysteries, see the Sanxuan kao, the Yongjue heshang guanglu 16 X1437.72.477c18-480b19.

233 Pŏpchip pyŏrhaeng nok chŏryo pyŏngip sagi, HPC 4, 766a 02-03: The translation is from Buswell 1983: 339.
practitioner could skip the mystery in the essence and enter directly into the mystery in the word, he might arouse defilements when in contact with the various phenomena without attaining the correct understanding of the self and the world through the mystery in the essence. However, since the mystery in the essence inevitably generates its own conceptual defilements, another mystery should be administered.

Chinul introduced the *kanhwa* technique as the mystery in the word. However, his introduction changed the meanings of both the mystery in the word and the mystery in the mystery. Chinul said the following, quoting Dahui’s explanation of the technique:

> Dahui said further, “Zhaozhou’s *hwadu*, ‘a dog has no Buddha-nature,’ must be kept raised before you regardless of whether you are joyful or angry, calm or disturbed. It is of prime importance not to set your mind on expecting an awakening…When you raise the *hwadu*, you must put your spirits in good order and inquire, ‘what is the meaning of this?’…this will enable men to remove the nails and pull out the pegs and to free themselves from the bridle and yoke. If you can attend carefully to your investigation, you will be able to cleanse away the preceding defects of conceptual understanding concerning the Buddha-dharma. Then you will reach the ultimate stage of peace and happiness.”

Chinul revealed his unique view of the last two mysteries. Chinul’s second mystery, *kanhwa* Sŏn, removes the conceptual defilements completely, not partially, as in Chenggu’s description of his second mystery; not only that, it also leads to a genuine enlightenment. Chinul argued that through the investigation of the *hwadu*, i.e., the mystery in the word, one comes to have complete mastery himself over the realm of birth and death. He went on to say that once

---

234 Pŏch’ip pyŏrhaeng nok chŏryo pyŏngip sagi, HPC 4, 765c14-766a01: The translation is quoted from Buswell 1983: 338.

235 Pŏch’ip pyŏrhaeng nok chŏryo pyŏngip sagi, HPC 4, 766a03-06.
such mastery is attained, “the mystery in the mystery…will naturally come to exist therein”
(玄中玄…自然在基中矣).^236 Hence, for Chinul, the mystery in the mystery does not refer to
such non-linguistic expressions as silence and shouts to further remove conceptual defilements.
It rather refers to the realm of enlightenment, attained by the mystery in the word. In this way,
Chinul presented his soteriological path in which one lays the foundation for one’s practice with
doctrinal descriptions of suchness (the mystery in the essence) and moves on to the kanhwa
technique (the mystery in the word), which will remove all the conceptual defilements and
eventually lead to enlightenment (the mystery in the mystery). This path of the three mysteries
fits well in his scheme of “sudden enlightenment followed by gradual cultivation”: the mystery
in the essence corresponds to “understanding awakening”; the mystery in the word to “gradual
cultivation”; finally, the mystery in the mystery to “realization awakening.”

(3) Kanhwa kyŏrŭi ron

The integration of kanhwa practice into the three mysteries in the Chŏryo is nullified in
the Kanhwa kyŏrŭi ron. In this posthumous work, Chinul seems to return to the Wŏndon
sŏngbullon in his treatment of the three mysteries while presenting kanhwa Sŏn as an
independent system of practice. The Kanhwa kyŏrŭi ron, however, reveals one critical
difference from the Wŏndon sŏngbullon in its accounts for the three mysteries: the former text
apparently supposes that the three mysteries could not lead to enlightenment. Chinul said:

Establishing three mysteries gates was the idea of the master Chenggu. His second
mystery used hwadu–responses to the fundamental affair–as words designed to eliminate
the defects of understanding. As long as the student does not eliminate these words of
cleansing knowledge and vision, however, he cannot be self-reliant in the sphere of birth
and death. Accordingly, the master established the third mystery: the mystery in the
mystery. This was intended to destroy the previous cleansing knowledge and vision
through such displays of function as pausing, silence, or shouting. Therefore it is said:

^236 Ibid., HPC 4, 766a17-18: The translation is quoted from Buswell 1983, 339.
“The establishment these three mysteries was originally intended to help with the abandoning of defects. But if you are still looking at the very source of the previous patriarchs, you are mistaken.”

According to the *Kanhwa kyŏrŭi ron*, the three mysteries only remove conceptual defilements; they do not bring about enlightenment. Although the mystery in the word is based on the *hwadu* just like *kanhwa* Sŏn, this second mystery, according to the *Kanhwa kyŏrŭi ron*, only serves as a part of the whole system of the three mysteries. For Chinul, the *kanhwa* technique is distinct from the three mysteries. In fact, the technique is clearly superior to the system of the three mysteries because it is a “shortcut” (*kyŏngjŏl*) to enlightenment. Chinul argued that if one attains one moment of realization through *kanhwa* Sŏn practice, he will attain all the virtuous states of mind, along with omniscience, without any effort.

(4) Implications

Chinul developed his analysis of the three mysteries with Chenggu’s explanation as the foundation, though he regarded Chenggu’s three mysteries as a separate system from Linji’s teaching. However, unlike Chenggu, Chinul explored the three mysteries in relation to *kanhwa* Sŏn technique. Because of his ambiguous position on the technique, Chinul eventually presented the three different interpretations for the three mysteries: (1) the mysteries refer to the three different styles of rhetoric, which constitute a soteriological path to enlightenment; (2) the *kanhwa* technique is integrated into this soteriological path as the second mystery, consequently

---

237 *Kanhwa kyŏrŭi ron*, HPC 4, 734b21-c03: The translation is from Buswell 1983: 244-245 with small changes in italics.

238 *Kanhwa kyŏrŭi ron*, HPC 4, 735a19-22.
redefining the third mystery as the realm of enlightenment; (3) The system of the mysteries becomes a secondary practice, which serves only to remove conceptual defilements.

All these interpretations share Chinul’s view on the relation between Sŏn and Kyo: Kyo, which corresponds to the mystery in the essence, becomes an essential part of Chinul’s soteriological systems. Nonetheless, it still occupies an inferior position to Sŏn. For our discussion that follows, Chinul’s second interpretation is particularly important because Paekp’a applied this interpretation to Linji’s teaching of three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials, even though Chinul clarified that his analysis for the mysteries has nothing to do with Linji’s three mysteries.

Overall, just like his predecessors, Chinul provided little explanation of Linji’s teaching. The more comprehensive accounts for the teaching first appear in the thirteenth century Korean text Sŏnmun kangyo chip, attributed to Ch’ŏnch’aek.

2) Ch’ŏnch’aek’s Sŏnmun kangyo chip

The Sŏnmun kangyo chip 禪門綱要集 attributed to the 13th century Korean Ch’ŏnt’ae master Chinjŏng Ch’ŏnch’aek 眞靜天頙 (d.u.), consists of the four chapters, of which the first three chapters discuss Linji’s teaching.239 The discussion on the teaching in this text follows a

---

239 The earliest known woodblock of the Sŏnmun kangyo chip dates back to 1531. The authorship of the Sŏnmun kangyo chip is controversial because there is no indication within the text. The text is attached to the end of the Sŏnmun pojang nok 禪門寶藏錄, which records the great Zen master Chinjŏng Ch’ŏnch’aek 眞靜大禪師天頙 as its author. The Mandŏksa chi and the Tongsa yŏlchŏn, both of which were compiled in the nineteenth century, identify this Zen master with the thirteenth-century Ch’ŏnt’ae scholarly monk of the same name. However, such modern Korean scholars as Ko Ik-chin argue that the two monks were different persons, questioning the credibility of the two nineteenth century texts as accurate historical records. Ko even attributes the authorship of the Sŏnmun kangyo chip to an unknown Zen master (Ko Ik-chin 1979: 159-165). Here, I assume that the Zen master Chinjŏng Ch’ŏnch’aek, not the Ch’ŏnt’ae monk, is the author of the Sŏnmun kangyo chip until further evidence on the authorship is found.
question-answer format among Sŏn students and three imaginary figures, named Howŏl 皓月 (Bright Moon), Ch’ŏngp’ung 清風 (Clean Wind), and Pyŏg’am 碧巖 (Blue Cliff). Through the mouths of these figures, Ch’ŏnch’aek provided his own analysis of the teaching. Rather than focusing simply on the three mysteries, he looked at Linji’s teaching as a whole and developed it into an integrated theory of language regarding human experience of reality as well as its implication for the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo. In doing so, Ch’ŏnch’aek presented the most comprehensive and clear account of the teaching, providing the definitions for such main terms as the statements, the mysteries, and the essentials. His analysis takes two slightly different approaches to Linji’s teaching according to the number of the empirical modes or the stages along the path to enlightenment though sharing the same view on the relationship between Sŏn and kyo.

(1) Three Statements: three different levels of realization.

In most of the Collection, Ch’ŏnch’aek regarded the three statements as three different modes of experience or realization of reality: fully enlightened, partially enlightened or delusory, and entirely delusory modes, each of which is characterized by three essentials, three mysteries, and three phrases. For Ch’ŏnch’aek, these three statements are not limited to linguistic expressions, as the term “statement” might suggest. In the middle of the Sŏnmun kangyo chip, he provided a definition of the term for a student who was confused about its meaning:

From all the forms of the mundane world, large and small, and existent and nonexistent, to the long statements and short words, acting and silence, and beating and shouting of the Buddhas and patriarchs, they are all statements.

Their names appear only in such Korean Sŏn texts as the Ojong kangyo, the Sŏnmun sugyŏng, and the Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ŏ, compiled from the 18th and the 19th century. Even in these texts, they always appear in the quotations from the Sŏnmun kangyo chip.
For Ch’ŏnch’aek, all types of verbal and non-verbal, linguistic and non-linguistic, and secular and Buddhist expressions are statements, classified into one of the three statements, depending on the extent of realization that they represent.

a. First Statement

According to Ch’ŏnch’aek, the first statement describes the enlightened state of mind. It represents the experience of the reality as suchness without any trace of defilements, the experience which is featured by the three essentials. Ch’ŏnch’aek explained the three essentials in terms of the two interchangeable paradigms of “illumination-function” (choyong 照用) and “capacity-function” (kiyong 機用):\(^\text{242}\)

The first essential elucidates illumination. It means that the great capacity responds perfectly…; the second essential unveils function. It means that the great function is fully manifested…; the third essential unveils the simultaneity of illumination and function. It means that capacity and function are given equally.\(^\text{243}\)

Ch’ŏnch’aek used the analogy of an instrument to explain the capacity-function paradigm, which could be summarized as follows: when an instrument is touched, all its parts operate altogether;

\(^{241}\) Sŏnmun kangyo chip, HPC 6, 854.b6-10.

\(^{242}\) The illumination-function pair first appears in the Fenyang’s section of the Jingde chuandeng lu with no further explanation in relation to the Linji’s teaching while the base-function pair is never mentioned prior to Ch’ŏnch’aek concerning with the teaching. It was Ch’ŏnch’aek who first employed the two pairs to explain the three essentials. The illumination-function pair as Linji’s teaching appears first on the Linji lu version of the Guzunsu yulu, compiled in 1267.

\(^{243}\) HPC 6, 853.c11-15
when untouched and unplayed, it is called the great capacity; when touched and played, it is called function.

This explanation is reminiscent of a well-known paradigm with a long pedigree tracing back to the *Awakening of Faith in Mahāyāna* (*Dasheng qixin lun*, K. *Taesŭng kisillŏn* 大乘起信論). The treatise explains reality in terms of the two opposite yet inseparable aspects: “mind as suchness” (C. *xin zhenru*, K. *sim chinyŏ* 心真如) and “mind as birth-and-death” (C. *xin shengmie*, K. *sim saengmyŏl* 心生滅). The former refers to the immutable aspect of reality; the latter to the conditional aspect. According to the *Awakening of Faith*, these two aspects are non-dual because they are based on the same reality. Because “mind as suchness” and “mind as birth-and-death” could correspond to capacity and function, respectively, the three essentials also represent the immutable and conditional aspects of reality as well as the non-duality of the two aspects. By linking the three essentials to Linji’s first statement, Ch’ŏnch’aek defined the first statement as expressing full and perfect enlightenment to the three essential aspects of reality. According to him, because realization on this level means attainment of both the Buddhas’ Dharma and the patriarchs’ mind, one who does so deserves to “be a master along with the patriarch-buddhas.”

The first statement is given the highest position in Ch’ŏnch’aek’s interpretation of three statements.

b. Second Statement

Ch’ŏnch’aek regarded the second statement as representing the middle level of realization. On this level, one attains a certain degree of enlightenment to suchness but still has

---

244 Ibid., HPC 6, 851.b23-c3.

245 The expression is in Linji’s second sermon of the teaching.
delusion. According to him, this state of the partial enlightenment and partial delusion is characterized by the three mysteries.

Ch’ŏnch’aeok apparently did not agree with Chenggu’s account of the three mysteries though he accepted Chenggu’s nomenclature: the “mystery in the essence,” the “mystery in the word,” and the “mystery in the mystery.” Rather than assigning specific Chan expressions to each of the mysteries, Ch’ŏnch’aeok defined the three mysteries in terms of capacity and function as he did for the three essentials:

Question: What is the first mystery?
Answer: The whole capacity responds by illuminating…
Question: What is the second mystery?
Answer: The woundrous function is everywhere…
Question: What is the third mystery?
Answer: The capacity and function are conferred equally.246

問如何是第一玄 答全機照應…問第二玄 答妙用縦橫…問第三玄 答機用齊施.

Ch’ŏnch’aeok explained the three mysteries in almost the same way that he did the three essentials: the three mysteries could refer to the immutable and conditional aspects of reality as well as the non-duality of these two aspects. Hence, Ch’ŏnch’aeok employed the analogy of an object and the shadow it casts to clarify the differences between the mysteries and the essentials and, by extension, between the first and second statements: the “essentials” can be compared to real objects while the “mysteries,” to shadows created by the objects. He further explained that a shadow merges into (C. ji, K. chūk 即) an object in the first statement while an object merges into a shadow in the second statement.247 Ch’ŏnch’aeok probably meant by this analogy that the essentials represent full and perfect enlightenment to reality, while the mysteries refer to partial

246 Ibid., HPC 6, 851a15-21.

247 For more details of this analogy, see Ibid., HPC 6, 855b8-19.
and imperfect enlightenment, and that the first and second statements express these two different degrees of enlightenment, respectively. According to Ch’ŏnch’aek, the realization in the second statement leads one to “become a master of the human and heavenly beings,” not equivalent to the Buddhas and the patriarchs.\textsuperscript{248}

c. Language and Reality

Before moving on to the third statement, it is useful to discuss the issue raised by Ch’ŏnch’aek’s explanation for the first and second statements. His respective accounts of the perfect and imperfect manifestation of reality in the first and second statements inevitably raise an issue about language and the reality. Ch’ŏnch’aek himself brought up this issue, asking the following question through the mouth of a student, who supposedly had not mastered the Sŏn use of language:

Question: if [you] say that the second and the third statements are linguistic statements, one who hears it would acknowledge. However, how can [you] say that the first statement is a linguistic statement?\textsuperscript{249}

問若曰第二第三句 是言句之句 則或聞命矣 第一句 則奚可以言句詮哉。

This question derives from a specific view of language, a view based on the fundamental suspicion of language. According to this view, language does not represent reality as such. It rather conceals or distorts the truth of reality and is therefore inadequate for expressing that truth or the experience of it. This negative view of language seems to be justified by the Zen tradition itself. Many Zen masters of medieval China defined Zen as not relying on language. Zen, according to their definition, is a tradition that transmits the ineffable mind-dharma (C. \textit{xinfa}, K. \textit{simpŏp} 心法) along the unbroken lineage from the Buddha himself, as shown in the

\textsuperscript{248} The expression is in Linji’s second sermon on the teaching.

\textsuperscript{249} Ibid., HPC 6, 852c13-15.
Zen description of its very first transmission: the Buddha Śākyamuni passed this dharma to his disciple Mahākāśyapa by holding up a flower, not uttering a word. Even Linji appeared to share such a negative view of language when he expressed his reluctance to preach about the mind-dharma at the request of a local magistrate: “If I were to demonstrate the great matter in strict keeping with the teaching of the ancestral school, I simply couldn’t open my mouth”

(若約祖宗門下稱揚大事直是開口不得).\(^{250}\)

Ch’ŏnch’ae answered this question regarding the inadequacy of language as follows:

How can [you] know that each and every linguistic statement made by patriarchs, Buddhas, and good friends is indeed incomprehensible just like the sound of a wooden person singing and clapping and a flake of snow that falls on a burning brazier. If you say that such a statement is nonexistent, you are mistaken as well. If you say that it is existent, you are also mistaken. If you say that it is neither existent nor nonexistent, or neither non-existential nor non-nonexistent, you are still mistaken. Also, you are not permitted not to say that it is existent or nonexistent, neither non-existential nor non-nonexistent, etc.\(^{251}\)

夫豈知祖佛善知識 所發言句 一一如木人唱拍 烘爐點雪 實不可擬議 謂之無語 亦不得 謂之有語 亦不得 非有語非無語 非非有語非非無語 擔不得 又不可不謂之有語無語 乃至非非有語非非無語.

Rather than discussing language in general, Ch’ŏnch’ae addressed the uniqueness of language as used by the enlightened. Such enlightened beings as Buddhas and Sŏn patriarchs fully and perfectly realize the truth of reality: that everything, including language, is empty. Even though they use language, therefore, they leave no trace of attachment in their mind, just as a flake of snow completely disappears as soon as it falls on a burning brazier. By using a tetralemmic description, Ch’ŏnch’ae asserted that the conceptual and intellectual speculation should not be

\(^{250}\) Linji yulu T1985.47.496b16: the translation is quoted from Sasaki 2009: 117.

\(^{251}\) Ibid., HPC 6, 853a5-10.
applied to the language of the enlightened. For Ch’ŏnch’aek, the first statement is possible as language used by people who attain enlightenment.

d. Third Statement

In Ch’ŏnch’aek’s analysis of Linji’s teaching, the third statement is placed on the lowest level: the statement represents various aspects of delusion. On this level of realization, one becomes attached to words and forms and develops dualistic modes of thinking: the distinctions between subject and object, enlightenment and unenlightenment, Buddha and sentient beings, etc.252 According to Ch’ŏnch’aek, all of the characteristics of delusion are represented by “three phrases” (C. sanju, K. samgu 三句).

Ch’ŏnch’aek is probably not the first monk in the history of Chan and Sŏn to employ the expression “three phrases” to describe the deluded state of mind. For example, the expression appears several times in the Baizhang lu百丈錄, where its meaning is similar to the one found in the Sŏnmun kangyo chip. For example, Baizhang said:

When [one] penetrates through the three phrases only by ceasing all intellectual views of existence and nonexistence as well as all desire, it is said that [he] cleans up the shit. Likewise, when [one] seeks for the Buddhas, wisdom, and all the dharmas of existence and non-existence, it is said that [he] brings in the shit. It is not said that [he] throws it out. Likewise, creating the Buddhas’ view and understanding, and merely clinging to what is seen, what is sought, and what is done are all called “the shit of conceptual proliferation” (prapañca).

但息一切有無知見 但息一切貪求 箇箇透過三句外 是名除糞秥
如今求佛求菩提求一切有無等法 是名運糞入 不名運糞出秥 如今作佛見作佛解
但有所見所求所著盡 名戲論之糞.

252 Ibid., HPC 6, 855.b3-4.

253 Here, I translate the Chinese character “ju 句” as “phrase” in order to distinguish its meaning from that of “sanju sanxuan sanyao 三句三玄三要), which I translate as “statement.”

254 Sijia yulu 四家語錄, Yanagida 1983: 22b05-09.
Whether Ch’ŏnch’aek was aware of this previous usages of the three phrases, he placed the third statement on the lowest level of expression, linking the statement to the three phrases. For him, on the level of the third statement, one becomes like “a wooden puppet on stage rather than a master who operates it” because of his delusion. Hence, Ch’ŏnch’aek asserted that such a person “even could not save himeself.”

e. Relationship of the Three Statements

Ch’ŏnch’aek did not assign any specific expressions exclusively to any of the three statements, implying that a certain expression or statement would not remain fixed as any of the three. In fact, Ch’ŏnch’aek argued that a statement could be defined as any of the three statements because every statement has the potential to represent the three essentials, the three mysteries, or the three phrases. However, according to him, a statement is defined or re-defined as one of the three statements not by the statement itself, but by its usage. To illustrate this, Ch’ŏnch’aek employed the analogy of the three seals: he compared the first, second, and third statements to the seal of the three essentials stamped, respectively, on air, on water, and on clay. Ch’ŏnch’aek then cited the Song Linji master Dahui Zonggao 大慧宗杲 (1089–1163) to explain this analogy:

Dahui said, “That a student of high capability listens to the Way is like stamping the seal on air; that a student of middle capability listens to the Way is like stamping the seal on water, and that a student of low capability listens to the Way is like stamping the seal on clay.”

---

255 The expression “a wooden puppet on stage” appears in Linji’s first sermon on the teaching.

256 The expression is in Linji’s second sermon.

257 Ibid., HPC 6, 853a10-13.

258 Ibid., HPC 6, 852a22-24. Dahui’s original remark is recorded with little variation from Ch’ŏnch’aek’s quotation in the Dahui pujue chanshi fayu 20 (T1998.47.894b17-18).
Though Ch’ŏnch’aek provided no further explanation, the definition or re-definition of a statement might happen in the following way.

An enlightened master has the Buddhas’ dharma-seal and the patriarchs’ mind-seal. With his enlightened mind, the master makes a statement, which could be verbal or non-verbal, linguistic or non-linguistic, or secular or religious to test his students or help them attain enlightenment. The master’s statement is always the first statement because it expresses the master’s enlightened state of mind. However, the very same statement also could be the first, second, or third statement, depending on the capability of the student who listens to the master’s statement. When a master makes a statement, a student with high spiritual capability will instantly attain enlightenment without falling into the trap created by the statement or leaving any trace of attachment, just as there is no trace of the seal stamped on air. In this case, the master’s statement becomes the first statement to his student. A student with mid-level spiritual capability would attain some degree of enlightenment. However, because the student’s enlightenment would not be perfect, he would have some attachment to the statement just as there is the briefest trace of the seal stamped on the surface of water. The statement becomes the second in this case. A student with lesser spiritual capability would not attain enlightenment at all. He would merely become attached to the statement and produce all sorts of dualistic thought, just as there is a distinct trace of the seal stamped on clay. In this case, the statement becomes the third.

In most of his Collection, Ch’ŏnch’aek connected the three statements to the three different levels of experience of reality. By positing a middle stage of partial enlightenment or unenlightenment in the three levels, he imbued a sense of progress, advancing from delusion to
enlightenment, into Linji’s teaching. At the same time, Ch’ŏnch’aek seems to deny the hierchical relationship between Sŏn and Kyo, by refusing to correlate the three levels to Sŏn and Kyo, of which the implication is clearly shown in his second approach to Linji’s teaching.

(2) Three Statements: Enlightenment and Unenlightenment

Ch’ŏnch’aek took a different approach to Linji’s teaching, employing the well-known Chan metaphor of the “live word” (C. huojū, K. hwalgū 活句) and the “dead word” (C. sijū, K. sagu 死句). Although his account for this new approach is rather brief, it reveals his vision of the unity of Sŏn and Kyo.

To the question of a student who did not understand that the first statement could be linguistic, Ch’ŏnch’aek responded in the following way:

An ancient virtuous [master] said, “If one realizes the dead word, he could not even save himself; if one realizes the live word, he would become a master [along with] the Buddhas and the partirarchs.” How could the dead word or the live word not be a linguistic statement? Alas! When a foolish person…sees somebody refer to such type of words as “the word that leads upward,”…, “the wholesome word,” “superior word,” he considers them as wondrous and special, and hence says that they are different dharmas.”

Ch’ŏnch’aek linked Linji’s teaching to the “live word” and the “dead word” by quoting the Song Linji master Yuanwu Keqin’s 圓悟克勤 (1063-1135) remark, which shares the expressions with Linji’s second sermon about the soteriological implications of the three statements. For Ch’ŏnch’aek, the first statement pararells the live word that leads one to become “a master along

---

259 HPC 6, 852c21-853a4

260 Yuanwu’s remark is recorded in the following texts with small variations: the Yuanwu Foguo chanshi yulu 圓悟佛果禪師語錄 13 (T1997.47.774a17) and 14 (T1997.47.778.b01-b03); the Foguo Yuanwu Zhenjue chanshi xinyao 佛果圓悟真覺禪師心要 1 (X1357.69.453c18).
with Buddhas and patriarchs,” while the third statement, the dead word that makes a student even “unable to save oneself.”

The terms “live word” and “dead word” that Ch’ŏnch’aek applied here, according to Ding-hwa Hsieh, were coined by the Yunmen monks of the early Song period and spread widely within the Chan community after being picked up by Yuanwu. In Chan masters’ usages of the terms, the “dead word” refers to the conceptual and theoretical descriptions that lead only to intellectual understanding while the “live word” refers to any types of descriptions that bring an end to dualistic modes of thinking and bring about enlightenment. Within the Chan community, all scriptural and doctrinal teachings that describe enlightenment or reality theoretically or conceptually would be regarded as the dead word since they hinder genuine enlightenment; on the contrary, the patriarchs’ words from the Chan literature would be regarded as the live word since they point directly to the truth and lead to enlightenment. However, if the patriarchs’ words are approached conceptually and intellectually, they would lose their vitality as the live word and thus become the dead word, just as the words of the Buddha degenerated into the dead word. Yuanwu even asserted that all the words, including shouting and beating, are the dead-words. Ch’ŏnch’aek showed his awareness of such dual nature of language in his following remark, which also reveals his vision of the unity of Sŏn and Kyo:

If one who understands in accord with the words speaks of [suchness] with his mouth, then not only the traces of the teachings of the twelve divisions of the scriptures of the three vehicles, but also holding up a flower on the Vulture Peak, the eminent monks’ mysterious words and wondrous phrases, shouting and beating, facing the wall in the

---

Shaolin temple, one word and one silence all would become the traces of the [scriptural] teachings... If one realizes it in mind, then not only holding up a flower, facing the wall would become the special transmission outside the scriptural teachings, but also the twelve divisions of the scriptures of the three vehicles and the vulgar words and the trivial speeches of the mundane world all would be a secret leading upward [to enlightenment].

隨語生解者 說之於口 則非但三乘十二分敎 是敎跡 靈鷲拈花 宗師玄言妙句一棒 一喝少林面壁一語一黙 皆是敎跡...得之於心 則非但拈花面壁 是敎外別傳 三乘十二分敎 乃至世間麁言細語 皆是向上一竅也.

For Ch’ŏnch’aek, Sŏn and Kyo are not fundamentally different from each other because, as he himself pointed out, they originate from the same enlightened mind: Kyo is based on the Buddha’s dharma, Sŏn on the patriarchs’ mind. Their different rhetorical or pedagogical styles are just the skillful means to help sentient beings with different capabilities attain the ultimate spiritual goal. There is no hierarchy between Sŏn and Kyo. Whether a certain statement is conceptual or non-conceptual, the statement becomes the dead word or the first statement if a student takes it as “the word that leads upward” (C. xiangshang ju, K. hyangsang gu 向上句) without any attachment and attains enlightenment; on the contrary, it becomes the dead word or the third statement if a student gets attached to the statement and generates conceptual defilements.

Ch’ŏnch’aek’s connection of the live and dead words to the three statements emphasizes the relationship between language and enlightenment. Nonetheless, his connection does not fit completely into Linji’s teaching. As mentioned above, the first and third statements could be matched with the live word and the dead word, respectively. However, the second statement just remains unmatched. Hence, by introducing the live word and the dead word to Linji’s teaching, Ch’ŏnch’aek presented the two stages of enlightenment and unenlightenment.

264 HPC 6, 859c9-16.
The Universality of Linji’s teaching

Ch’ŏnch’aek made an important remark on the issue of the universality of Linji’s teaching at the end of the *Sŏnmun kangyo chip*. He says,

When Yunmen used it [i.e. suchness], it became “three phrases and one phrase.” When Linji used it, it became “three mysteries and three essentials.” When Xuefeng used it, it became “three wooden balls.” When Guizong used it, it became “dragging three times.” When Zhizhe [Zhiyi] used it, it became “three-fold cessation and three observations.” When Zhaozhou used it, it became “Have a cup of tea!” When Zhudi used it, it became “raising a finger.”

Ch’ŏnch’aek identified Linji’s teaching with those of such non-Linji affiliated Chan masters as Yunmen Wenyan, Xuefeng Yicun, and Zhaozhou Congshen as well as the Tiantai master Zhiyi. By doing so, Ch’ŏnch’aek implied that Linji’s teaching was universally shared by all Chan and doctrinal schools. Even though all these teachings are different in style, they all articulate the same principle of three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials. According to Ch’ŏnch’aek, the principle supposes three different modes of experience of reality: complete enlightenment, partial enlightenment or delusion, and complete delusion. The Kyo masters explain the principle conceptually as shown in the example of the Tiantai doctrine of “three-fold cessation and three observations” while the Sŏn masters embody the principle in their acts and words, as revealed in the old cases of Yunmen, Linji, Zhaozhou, Guizong, Xuefeng, and Zhudi.

---

Zhiyi’s doctrine is also called “the three truths or judgments” (*C. sandi 三諦*): (1) the truth of emptiness (*C. kongdi*), viz. all things are empty in their essential nature; (2) the truth of being provisionally real (*C. jiadi*), viz., all things are given a provisional reality, produced by a causal process; and (3) the truth of the mean (*C. zhongdi*), viz. all things are neither real nor unreal in the absolute sense. They are just suchness.
Ch’ŏnch’aek’s claim of this teaching’s universality also confirms his vision of the Sŏn and kyo unity. The teachings of the Sŏn and doctrinal schools are equal because they share the same principle of three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials even though they are different in style.

(4) Influence

Ch’ŏnch’aek’s Sŏnmun kangyo chip provides a clear account of Linji’s teaching for the first time in Chan and Sŏn history. However, the text received little attention probably because of its conceptual approach to one of the teachings of Linji, the representative figure of the iconoclastic and non-conventional style of Chan. Even in Korea, virtually no one paid attention to this text until the eighteenth century when there was a movement among some Korean Sŏn masters to define their tradition as the Imje school. The text, in particular, its two different approaches to Linji’s teaching, occupied an important place in the early nineteenth century Korean Sŏn debate.

As seen before, Ch’ŏnch’aek’s two approaches suggest two different perspectives on human experience of reality. His first approach introduces the three different modes or stages: (1) the complete and full enlightenment, represented by the three essentials; (2) the incomplete and partial enlightenment, by the three mysteries; (3) the complete unenlightenment, by the three phrases. On the other hand, his second approach supposes only two different ones: (1) enlightenment, characterized by the live word; (2) unenlightenment, by the dead word. In fact, Ch’ŏnch’aek focused on the three-stage analysis in most of the Sŏnmun kangyo chip, briefly introducing the second approach without much explanation. However, these two different approaches to Linji’s teaching provide the rationale for the Sŏn taxonomies of Paekp’a and Ch’oŏi, respectively.
4. Concluding Remarks

Sino-Korean Chan and Sŏn masters interpreted Linji’s teaching of “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials,” based on their positions on the issue of Chan/ Sŏn and Jiao/ Kyo relationship. The two positions stood out: (1) the Chan/ Sŏn superiority to Jiao/ Kyo; (2) the unity of Chan/ Sŏn and Jiao/ Kyo.

The first position introduced the hierarchical interpretation of Linji’s teaching (Chenggu, Ch’ŏnch’aek, and Chinul). It interpreted the teaching as representing different levels of realization of the truth and thus as a series of stages along which one proceeds toward the ultimate goal of Buddhism from the lowest (the third statement or the mystery in the essence) to the highest (the first statement or the mystery in the mystery). On the other hand, the second position of the unity of the two strands of Buddhism denied this hierarchical viewpoint in interpreting Linji’s teaching (Huihong and Ch’ŏnch’aek). This position claimed that the teaching expresses the truth of reality that is manifested in everything in the same degree or level though its appearance is different.

As the following chapters will show, Paekp’a took the former position. In particular, he accepted Chinul’s idea in the Chŏryo that Kyo or the doctrinal studies are posited as a preliminary step for Sŏn or kanhwa meditation technique, and established the three-fold taxonomy of Sŏn, based on Ch’ŏnch’aek’s hierarchical interpretation of the three statements. Ch’ŏui stood on the second position. He used Ch’ŏnch’aek’s second interpretation, which looked at the teaching in terms of enlightenment and non-enlightenment, to formulate the two-fold Sŏn taxonomy, and ultimately argued for the unity of Sŏn and Kyo.

Chenggu and Ch’ŏnch’aek’s claim for the universality of the teaching was also crucial in the nineteenth century Korean Sŏn debate. In particular, Ch’ŏnch’aek argued that all Sŏn and
Kyo teachings include Linji’s teaching. Although these teachings are different in their rhetorical styles, they all expressed the same principle of reality, represented by Linji’s teaching. The claim of the universality of the teaching allowed Paekp’’a to look at the traditional image of the Linji school from a broader perspective.
Paek’a represented the traditional Korean Sŏn view on the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo, in which the doctrinal studies were incorporated into its soteriological scheme as a preparatory step for the Sŏn training. He attempted to justify this view by integrating Korean Sŏn soteriology into the Imje tradition.

Korean Sŏn Buddhism in late Chosŏn was in the process of re-establishing its own identity. The Korean Sŏn masters restored their Sŏn lineage by producing several genealogical texts. Most of these texts connected the Korean Sŏn lineage to the Chinese Linji lineage by establishing T’aego Pou, who had traveled to China and received dharma from the Linji master Shiwu Qinggong (1272~1352), as the first patriarch of the Korean Sŏn lineage. However, apart from this genealogical connection to the Linji tradition, Korean Sŏn soteriology of this time took root in the indigenous regimen, which combined the Linji and Heze practices. The regimen incorporated the kanhwa Sŏn technique and the doctrinal studies within the frame of Zongmi’s system of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation.” This syncretic and yet unique soteriology was embodied in Chinul’s “three-mystery” path in his Chŏryo. Hence, Korean Sŏn Buddhism of Paep’a’s time linked its genealogy to the Chinese Linji lineage while still maintaining the indigenous soteriology. This unique combination created an inevitable tension between the Linji and Heze lineages, on the one hand; and the Sŏn exclusivism and the Sŏn-Kyo syncretism that the two lineages advocated, on the other hand. In particular, since the Heze approach to Chan had long been branded as wrong by the prevailing Linji lineage, this tension was problematic for the Korean Sŏn masters.
Paekp’a was the first Korean Sŏn master who took the serious approach to this tension. He attempted to resolve the tension by connecting the Korean Sŏn tradition to the Imje tradition from the soteriological perspective. Pivotal was Linji’s teaching of “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials.” As will be seen later in this chapter, this teaching served as a juncture for the two seemingly opposite soteriological approaches. In particular, based on Ch’ŏnch’aek’s interpretation of Linji’s teaching, Paep’a laid out a three-fold taxonomy of Sŏn. With his taxonomy, Paekp’a upheld the Imje school, with which the Korean Sŏn tradition claimed to be affiliated, as the supreme of all the Sŏn schools, and at the same time unified the Korean Sŏn and Imje traditions soteriologically.

This chapter explores how Paekp’a legitimized the traditional Korean view on the Sŏn-Kyo relationship by correlating the Korean Sŏn and Imje traditions. I will first examine how he placed Zongmi and Chinul’s Heze brand of the soteriological frame into the Imje tradition, and then explore how Paekp’a’s taxonomy not only promoted the Imje tradition but also defined or redefined the two traditions. I will rely mainly on Paekp’a’s two major works: the Sŏnmun sugyŏng 禪文手鏡 and the Susŏn kyŏlsamun 修禪結社文.

1. The Two-Fold Paradigm: Hyangsang and Hyangha

Paekp’a regarded Linji’s teaching as representing Zongmi’s approach to Chan, which gives the basic framework to Chinul’s soteriology. Zongmi, who proclaimed himself to be the fifth Heze patriarch, explained Chan in terms of dharma (C. fa, K. pŏp 法) and person (C. ren, K. in 人). Dharma indicates the nature of reality, which constitutes the ultimate ground as well as the very content of enlightenment, while person indicates the soteriological regimen for an individual, depending on his spiritual capabilities. According to Zongmi, dharma has two
meanings of immutability and conditionality; person involves two gates of sudden enlightenment and gradual cultivation. In place of Zongmi’s two categories, Paekp’a employed the new terminologies of *hyangsang* (leading upward) and *hyangha* (leading downward): the former corresponds to dharma, while the latter, to person. Paekp’a, then, connected this paradigm of dharma/person or *hyangsang/hyangha* to Linji’s teaching.

1) *Hyangsang*

Paekp’a applied one of Linji’s sermons of “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials” to explain *hyangsang*, the counterpart of Zongmi’s category of dharma. Paekp’a said:

*Hyangsang* is suchness of the original share…The master [Imje] says, “Buddha is the mind’s purity…; dharma is the mind’s radiance…; the Way is the pure light that pervades everywhere without hindrance…The three are one, yet all are empty without real existence.”

According to Paekp’a, this sermon specifically reveals two aspects of mind: immutability and conditionality. Purity, radiance, and pervasion without hindrance refer to the conditional aspect of mind while the oneness of these “three essentials” of conditionality refers to the immutable aspect of mind. Following the lead of Zongmi, Paekp’a explained these two aspects. He employed Zongmi’s analogy of gold and products of gold to emphasize the non-duality of the two aspects: the immutable nature underlies the conditional appearance of the diverse phenomena just as the nature of gold is present within all golden products. Paekp’a also gave

---


268 Sŏnmun sugyŏng, HPC 10, 515a21-b03. Linji’s original sermon is in his second sermon of the teaching in chapter three.

269 Susŏn kyŏlsamun, HPC 10, 532a12-14. For details of Zongmi’s analogy, see Kamata 1979: 65.
various alternative sets of this paradigm of immutability and conditionality just as Zongmi did: essence, nature, principle, calmness, stillness, nirvana, emptiness, killing, on the one hand; function, form, phenomena, wisdom, contemplation, bodhi, wondrous-existences, saving, on the other.  

These correspondences can be charted as follows:

Table 4. Two-fold paradigm for the mind

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>immutability</th>
<th>conditionality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>essence</td>
<td>function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absorbtion (dhyāna)</td>
<td>wisdom (prajñā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calmness (śamatha)</td>
<td>observation/insight (vipaśyanā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nature</td>
<td>form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suchness</td>
<td>birth-and-death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absolute truth (paramārtha)</td>
<td>conventional truth (saṃvṛtisatyā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extinction (nirvāṇa)</td>
<td>awakening (bodhi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emptiness</td>
<td>wondrous existences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>killing</td>
<td>saving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Zongmi’s two-fold paradigm for dharma provides the fundamental frame for Paekp’a’s understanding of mind. Although Paekp’a did not deny Zongmi’s more complex theory of “empty tranquil numinous awareness” (C. kongji lingzhi, K. kongjŏk yŏngji 空寂靈知), this opposite and yet non-dual set of immutability and conditionality becomes the ultimate ground for the spiritual development outlined under the hyangha category.  

---

270 Susŏn kyōlsamun HPC 10, 532a16-19.

271 Chinul accepted Zongmi’s concept of “empty tranquil numinous awareness.” Paekp’a also seems to agree with Zongmi and Chinul’s concept of mind. Just like Chinul, Paekp’a praised this concept as providing the clearest account for mind. Paekp’a also mentioned the term “empty tranquil numinous awareness” a few times in his Susŏn kyōlsamun within the context of laying out his soteriological program. Despite his seeming agreement of Chinul and Zongmi’s concept of mind, however, Paekp’a provided little explanation of the term in anywhere of his writings; neither did he quotes Chinul and Zongmi’s detailed accounts of the term. As will be discussed, Paep’a even did not apply the concept of “awareness,” which serves as a key factor to distinguish the Heze from the Hongzhou schools in Zongmi’s Chan taxonomy, to his taxonomy. In explaining mind in his own term, Paekp’a simply sticked
2) **Hyangha**: the three different kinds of Sŏn (*Samjong Sŏn*)

Paekp’a treated the soteriological issues involving an individual’s spiritual capability and a possible regimen to attain enlightenment under the category of *hyangha*, the counterpart of Zongmi’s “person.” Paekp’a introduced the Sŏn taxonomy to explain these issues. According to him, such a perspective for *hyangha* is also revealed in Linji’s teaching. Paekp’a said:

*Hyangha* is the three Sŏns of new infusion...He who attains at the first statement becomes a teacher along with buddha-patriarchs...; he who attains at the second statement becomes the teacher of human and heavenly beings...; he who attains at the third statement cannot save even himself.  

Ch’ŏnch’aek’s account for Linji’s teaching in the *Sŏnmun kangyo chip* provides the basic framework Paekp’a used to explain this sermon. As seen in chapter three, one of Ch’ŏnch’aek’s approaches to Linji’s teaching offers a hierarchical analysis on the basis of human empirical modes of reality. In this approach, the three statements represent the three different levels of experience of suchness: full enlightenment, partial enlightenment or delusion, and full delusion, each of which is characterized by the three essentials, the three mysteries, or the three phrases. Drawing on Ch’ŏnch’aek’s account, Paekp’a regarded this sermon as revealing the three different levels of Sŏn: the first statement represents the highest level of Sŏn; the second, the middle; the third, the lowest. Under the category of *hyangha*, Paekp’a performed the three-fold taxonomy of Sŏn, connecting each level of Sŏn exclusively to the specific Sŏn schools. In particular, he categorized the six main lineages of Sŏn, which originated from the sixth patriarch to the two-fold category of immutability and conditionality. For Chinul’s accounts for the concept, see Buswell 1986: 199-242 and Keel 1984: 66-90; for Zongmi’s, see Kamata 1979: 336 and Gregory 2002: 216-218.

---

272 *Sŏnmun sugyŏng*, HPC 10, 515b11-14.
Huineng: the Heze 荷澤 (K. Hat’aek) and the so-called “five houses” (C. wujia; K. oga 五家) of Linji 臨濟 (K. Imje), Yunmen 雲門 (K. Unmun), Weiyang 潕仰 (K. Wiang), Fayan 法眼 (K. Pŏban), and Caodong 曹洞 (K. Chodong).

Paekp’a decided the hierarchy of these six Sŏn lineages in terms of the two standards: (1) Ch’ŏnch’aek’s characterization of the three different modes of experience as the three essentials, the three mysteries, and the three phrases; (2) more importantly, the level of attaining the truth of hyangsang. According to Paekp’a, the Linji and Yunmen schools are highest ranked, since they realize the three essentials and their oneness, and thus fully grasp the two aspects of immutability and conditinality. He asserted that both schools’ understanding of the truth of hyangsang is so perfect that it leaves no trace of misunderstanding, just as a seal stamped on air leaves no trace. With their realization, Paekp’a argued, the schools become the masters along with buddha-patriarchs.²⁷³

Paekp’a placed the Weiyang, Fayan, and Caodong schools in the middle rank because they only understand true emptiness, the immutable aspect of mind. Paekp’a commented that the three schools’s level of realization of suchness corresponds to the “three mysteries,” which carries just a part of the truth of hyangsang and thus still leaves the trace of such partial enlightenment or delusion just as a seal stamped on the surface of water leaves the briefest trace. Paekp’a said that with their partial enlightenment, the schools become the masters of the human and heavenly beings.²⁷⁴

²⁷³ *Ibid.*, HPC 10, 515b15-19; Paekp’a classified these two school as the first statement Sŏn when he connected the first statement to patriarch Sŏn: *Ibid.*, HPC 10, 519c17-18.

²⁷⁴ *Ibid.*, HPC 10, 515b20-c02; Paekp’a argued that the Weiyang and Fayan schools are different from the Caodong school because the first two schools realize the three mysteries and the Caodong school realizes the true emptiness. However, Paekp’a asserted that all these three schools realize the immutability of suchness when he associated these schools with tathāgata Sŏn: *Ibid.*, HPC 10, 520b01-02.
The Heze school is located in the lowest rank in Paekp’a’s Sŏn taxonomy. According to Paekp’a, the Heze masters get attached to words and letters, never seeing the truth transmitted through them. In its approach to the Buddhist teachings, they only understand such concepts of existence, non-existence, and their mean, Paekp’a’s further clarification for Ch’ŏnch’aek’s “three phrases.” Paekp’a compared the Heze masters’ attachment to a seal stamped on clay leaving traces. According to him, the Heze followers could not even save themselves because of their conceptual attachments.

The application of this taxonomy to the category of hyangha serves a dual purpose for Paekp’a: (1) promoting the Linji school, with which the Korean Sŏn masters in late Chosŏn claimed to be affiliated; (2) integrating the Korean Sŏn and Linji traditions soteriologically. As seen in chapter two, taxonomy functions as a polemical tool to promote the lineage of its author. For example, Zongmi upheld his own Heze lineage as being the supreme Chan tradition of all in his Chan taxonomy, arguing that the lineage fully realized the secretly-transmitted truth. Paekp’a designed his taxonomy with the same motivation as Zongmi’s. With his taxonomy of Sŏn, Paekp’a purported to promote the Korean Sŏn lineage by placing the Linji school in the highest position though he designated the Yunmen school as the same level with the Linji.

As Peter Gregory points out, taxonomy also has a soteriological function. Taxonomy itself

275 For Paekp’a’s account of the three phrases, see Ibid., HPC 10, 516a11-a15.

276 Ibid., HPC 10, 515c02-05; Paekp’a designated the Hat’aeck school as the first statement Sŏn, calling it principle Sŏn: Susŏn kyŏlsamun, HPC 10, 533c16-534a04.

277 For Zongmi’s taxonomy, see Gregory 2002: 224-252.

278 Paekp’a provided no explanation for his treatment of the Yunmen school. In my opinion, his treatment probably derives from the early Song Chan situation in which both Linji and Yunmen lineages were influential in the gong’an Chan movement and the latter died out before any sectarian rivalry might have sprouted between the two lineages. For the relationship of the two lineages and their involvement in the gong’an Chan movement, see Hsieh 1993: 109-164.
constitutes a Buddhist path (mārga) in which Buddhist teachings are assigned “as a graded progress moving from the most elementary to the most profound.”279  In Paek’a’s case, the path is laid out in accord with his three-fold taxonomy, in which one proceeds from the third through the second to the first statement.  As will be seen later in this chapter, Paek’a connected this three-fold path to Chinul’s interpretation of the three mysteries in the Chōryo. Such connection enables Paek’a to incorporate the Korean Sŏn practice into the Linji tradition.

Now, let us consider how Paek’a used his three-fold taxonomy to promote the Linji tradition and define the Korean Sŏn soteriology in more detail.

2. The Taxonomy of Paek’a: Promoting the Linji lineage

Paek’a’s taxonomy is a polemical claim supporting the Imje lineage rather than an objective analysis of the teachings of the six Sŏn lineages.  He applied a few existing notions within the Korean Sŏn community of his time to his taxonomy in order to serve his polemical purpose.  Such notions are: (1) the distinction between tathāgata Sŏn (C. rulai Chan, K. yōrae Sŏn 如來禪) and patriarch Sŏn (C. zushi Chan, K. chosa Sŏn 祖師禪); (2) the idea of the transmission of mind (C. chuanxin, K. chŏnsim 傳心); (3) the analogy of a genuine-gold store (C. zhenjinpu, K. chingūmp’o 眞金鋪) and a general merchandise store (C. zahuopu, K. chaphwap’o 雜貨鋪).  By reinterpreting these notions, Paek’a legitimized his taxonomy and the authority of the Imje lineage.

1) Patriarch Sŏn and Tathāgata Sŏn

Probably the most important and often-used terms in Paekp’a’s taxonomy are patriarch Sŏn and tathāgata Sŏn. In order to see how he treated these two terms to justify his polemical claim, we need first to see their original meanings.

The term “tathāgata Chan” appears in various texts: for example, the *Mahāparinirvāṇasūtra* (C. *Da banniepan jing*, K. *Tae pan yŏlban kyŏng* 大般涅槃經) and the *Avatāṃsakasūtra* (C. *Huayan jing*, K. *Hwaŏm kyŏng* 華嚴經).280 In particular, in the *Laṅkāvatāra sūtra* (C. *Leng que jing*, K. *Nŭngga kyŏng* 楞伽經), the term is used in connection with Chan taxonomy.281 The *Laṅkāvatāra sūtra* distinguishes Chan into four kinds, with which tathāgata Chan is the highest.282 In the scripture, as the term itself indicates, tathāgata Chan refers to the Chan which would be attained at the stage of the tathāgata’s.283 Heze Shenhui 荷澤神會 (668-760) used the term polemically for the first time in Chan history. He employed the term to refer to his brand of Chan in contrast to the Northern school Chan. Accusing the Northern school of being entrapped in dualistic thought, Shenhui described his tathāgata Chan as the Chan of “no-thought,” which was characterized by the non-dual state of mind.284 He went further to say that this Chan had been transmitted from Bodhidharma through the four Chinese

---

280 *Da banniepan jing* T7.1.198b07-08 and *Huayan jing* T278.9.679a21-22.

281 The scripture was influential in early Chan. For details, see Faure 1997: 145-159.

282 The four kinds of Chan in the scripture are (1) the Chan (dhyāna) practiced by the ignorant; (2) the Chan devoted to the examination of meaning; (3) the Chan with tathatā (suchness) for its object; (4) the Chan of the tathāgatas. For details, see *Leng que jing* T671.16.533a02-04 and Suzuki 1999: 85-86.

283 Ibid., 85-86.

Chan patriarchs eventually to his master, the would-be sixth patriarch Huineng. Later, Zongmi, who proclaimed himself to be the fifth generation master of the Heze lineage, accepted Shenhui’s notion of tathāgata Chan, using the term “pure Chan of the tathāgata” (C. *rulai qingjing chan*, K.*yŏrae ch'ŏngjo Sŏn* 如來清淨禪). According to Zongmi, this brand of Chan was the Chan of the “supreme vehicle” (C. *zuishang sheng*, K. *ch’ŏesang sung* 最上乘), which should be cultivated after awakening suddenly to the fact that one’s mind is originally pure without defilements and equipped with an untainted nature. Since he elsewhere defined the cultivation after sudden awakening as no-thought practice, Zongmi’s pure Chan of the tathāgata was the very kind of Chan of no-thought that Shenhui had advocated centuries before.

The term “patriarch Chan” first appears within the dialogue between Yangshan Huiji 仰山慧寂 (807-883) and Xiangyan Zhixian 香嚴智閑 (d. 898) from the *Zutang ji* 祖堂集 (K. *Chodang chip*), the full version of which is recorded in Guishan Lingyou’s 潙山靈祐 (771-853) recorded sayings. In this dialogue, Yangshan tests Xiangyan’s level of realizing the truth. Xiangyan responds with the following verse:

```
Last year I was not poor;
This year I am poor.
Last year I had a place to erect a gimlet;
```

---


286 *Chanyuan zhuquan ji duxu* (禪源諸詮集都序), Kamata 1979: 23.


288 *Tanzhou Guishan Lingyou chanshi yulu* 潞州潙山靈祐禪師語錄 (Hereafter *Guishan yulu*) T1989.47.580b25-c03; *Zutang ji* 祖堂集 19 K45.351a01-a06.
This year I don’t even have a gimlet.289

去年未是貧 今年始是貧 去年無卓錐之地 今年錐亦無.

Based on this verse, Yangshan assesses Xiangyan’s level in the following way:

You, elder brother, only know that there is tathāgata Chan.  
But, [you] do not know that there is also patriarch Chan!290

師兄在知有如來禪 且不知有祖師禪.

Then, Xiangyan responds again with another verse.

I have an opportunity and I look at you with twinkling eyes.  
If you don’t understand, I will call another monk.291

我有一機 瞬目視伊 若人不會 別喚沙彌.

After listening to the verse, Yangshan finally reports to his master Guishan that Xiangyan has realized patriarch Chan.  In the dialogue, Yangshan recognizes Xiangyan’s first and second verses as representing tathāgata Chan and patriarch Chan, respectively.  Although the dialogue does not give the exact meaning of these two types of Chan, it certainly depicts patriarch Chan as superior to tathāgata Chan.292

---

289 Zutang ji 19 K45.351a04-05.  The Guishan yulu version is a little different: “Last year’s poverty is not poverty; this year’s poverty is poverty. Last year I was poor, but I still had a place to erect a gimlet; this year I am poor, but I don’t even have a gimlet.” (去年貧未是貧 今年貧始是貧 去年貧猶有卓錐之地 今年貧錐亦無; Guishan yulu T1989.47.580b28-29; the translation is quoted from Jiang Wu 2008: 116 with small changes).

290 Zutang ji 19 K45.351a05-06.  The Guishan yulu version is as follows: “I approve that you, junior brother, have realized tathāgata Chan.  But [you] won’t be able to see there is patriarch Chan even in your dream!” (如來禪 許師弟會 祖師禪 未夢見在; Guishan yulu T1989.47.580b29-c01).

291 Guishan yulu T1989.47.580c02: the translation is quoted from Jiang Wu 2008: 116 with small changes (in Italics).  The Zutang ji version does not have this verse.

292 Jiang wu suggests, tathāgata Chan could refer to a type of Chan which allows a gradual progress toward enlightenment as the first verse mentions a period from the last year to this year while patriarch Chan appears to be related to the instant realization of the truth as Xiangyan describes in the second verse.  For details, see Jiang Wu 2008: 116.
This notion of the superiority of patriarch Chan to tathāgata Chan probably developed in the period of late Tang and early Song. As the Mazu lineage became dominant and exerted to establish Chan as separate from the scriptural tradition, there arised the necessity for the new brand of Chan that would replace the old brand that had a scriptural origin and the strong connection to the Heze lineage, and at the same time encapsulate the lineage’s campaign for the independence of Chan.293 Eventually, tathāgata Chan came to refer to a type of Chan related to conceptual and theoretical principles drawn from the scriptures, reminiscent of the Heze brand of Chan; patriarch Chan indicated the Chan of the supreme level that would not be confined within the conceptual frame and thus transcend the level of tathāgata Chan. Such hierarchical distinction between these two types of Chan became widespread among the Chan community though not all Chan masters of the Song and subsequent periods agreed with the distinction.294

Paekp’are interpreted such notions of patriarch Sŏn and tathāgata Sŏn to justify his three-fold taxonomy. He was well aware of the age-long distinction between these two types of Sŏn:

The popular view from ancient times says that there are principle Sŏn and Sŏn-outside-the-format in terms of dharma; there are tathāgata Sŏn and patriarch Sŏn in terms of person. This means that principle Sŏn is nothing other than tathāgata Sŏn; Sŏn-outside-the-format is nothing other than patriarch Sŏn.295

古來通談曰 約法名義理禪格外禪 約人名如來禪祖師禪 此則義理禪即如來禪格外禪即祖師禪也.

293 In early Chan, the Heze masters were not the only Chan masters to use the term tathāgata Chan as referring to the supreme level of Chan. Huineng’s biography, written in 803, also describes the rulai qingjing chan as supreme. However, as mentioned above, the Heze masters probably took the most systematic approach to this term. For the details in the usage of the term in Huineng’s biography, see Jiang Wu 2008: 115.

294 For example, Dahui appeared to be critical of this distinction of tathāgata Chan and patriarch Chan: see Araki 1969: 45.

295 Sŏnmun sugyŏng HPC 10, 519b02-04.
Rather than using the generally-accepted correspondences of tathāgata Sŏn/ principle Sŏn and patriarch Sŏn/ Sŏn-outside-the-format, Paekp’a changed one of the correspondences.

According to him, the correspondence of tathāgata Sŏn/ principle Sŏn is simply wrong since these two are different from each other. He argued that tathāgata Sŏn is superior to principle Sŏn because principle Sŏn remains confined within the format of the conceptual and theoretical principles while tathāgata Sŏn transcends such format and becomes “Sŏn-outside-the-format” (C. gewai Chan, K. kyŏg’oe sŏn 格外禪), together with patriarch Sŏn. Paekp’a went further to say that to name principle Sŏn tathāgata Sŏn was to give an undeserved name (濫名) to principle Sŏn while to name tathāgata Sŏn principle Sŏn was to give a tainted name (累名) to tathāgata Sŏn.296

By promoting tathāgata Sŏn over principle Sŏn, along with the existing notion of patriarch Sŏn superiority to tathāgata Sŏn, Paekp’a presented the three types of Sŏn in a hierarchial order: patriarch Sŏn, tathāgata Sŏn, and principle Sŏn in descending order.

Paekp’a linked these three types of Sŏn to Linji’s three statements: patriarch Sŏn corresponds to the first statement, represented by the Linji and Yunmen lineages; tathāgata Sŏn, to the second by the Caodong, Weiyang, and Fayan lineages; principle Sŏn, to the third by the Heze lineage (All the connections are charted in Table 5). This linkage between the three types of Sŏn and the three statements justifies Paekp’a’s taxonomy of the Sŏn lineages and at the same time characterizes the three types of Sŏn with the features of the three statements: these three types of Sŏn are now defined in terms of the level of realizing the truth of hyangsang: patriarch Sŏn realizes the immutable and conditional aspect of suchness; tathāgata Sŏn realizes only the immutable aspect; principle Sŏn never realizes these two aspects. For Pakp’a, tathāgata Sŏn

296 Ibid., HPC 10, 519b06-07.
and patriarch Sŏn belong to Sŏn-outside-the-format because these two types of Sŏn realize the truth of hyangsang partially or fully without falling into dualistic mode of thinking, not because they use the less or non-conceptual rhetoric. Although Paekp’a presented a few examples of the rhetorical differences of the three types of Sŏn, he was inconsistent and even self-contradictory. Hence, for Paekp’a, the major criterion for the hierarchy of principle Sŏn, tathāgata Sŏn, and patriarch Sŏn is the extent that they realize the truth of hyangsang. With this interpretation of the three types of Sŏn, Paekp’a upheld the Linji school as patriarch Sŏn of the first statement, which realizes the two aspects of suchness fully and perfectly.

Table 5. Paekp’a’s taxonomy of the five houses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generally accepted view</th>
<th>Paekp’a’s view</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>patriarch Sŏn</strong></td>
<td>Sŏn-outside format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tathāgata Sŏn</strong></td>
<td>principle Sŏn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hat’aek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1&lt;sup&gt;st&lt;/sup&gt; statement: Imje, Unmun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3&lt;sup&gt;rd&lt;/sup&gt; statement: Hat’aek</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2) Mind-transmission

The notion of the “mind-transmission” developed in relation to the Chan endeavor to establish its own identity. As mentioned in chapter two, during the period from late Tang to early Song, there existed two different views of Chan: Chan that represented “a special

---

297 Paekp’a gave “Mountains are mountains; waters are waters 山山水水” as an expression for patriarch Sŏn in the Sŏnmun sugyŏng but for tathāgata Sŏn in the Susŏn kyŏlsa mun; he also said that Fayan’s “If you see all forms are not forms, then you do not see Tathāgata 若見諸相非相即不見如來” as an expression for patriarch Sŏn, but the Fayan school whose founder is Fayan is classified as tathāgata Sŏn in his taxonomy. For more expressions for the two types of Sŏn, presented by Paekp’a, see Susŏn kyŏlsa mun, HPC 10, 534c10-c17 and Sŏnmun sugyŏng, HPC 10, 519c04-12.
transmission outside the teaching or the harmony between Chan and the teaching.”

Eventually, the view of Chan as an independent tradition overshadowed the rival view of the synthetic Chan. The recognition of Chan as a special transmission subsequently generated the idea that such independent Chan derived directly from the Buddha himself. The famous episode of the so-called “holding up a flower” (C. nianhua, K. yŏmhwa 持華) was conceived to substantiate such Chan claim in this period.

In the Sino-Korean Chan/ Sŏn tradition, more than one episode between the Buddha and Kāśyapa developed to serve for this campaign for the independence of Chan. Song Chinese and Koryŏ Korean masters produced the notion that the Buddha’s transmission of mind to Kāśyapa happened in more than one time and place. In particular, the fourteenth century Korean Sŏn master Kagun 覺雲 (d.u.) testified in his Sŏnmun yŏmsong sŏrhwa 禪門拈頌說話 that different claims on the number of the Buddha’s mind-transmission were circulating in his time. Refuting these views, Kagun asserted that the tranmssion had occurred in three different places. He gave the episodes regarding these three places of mind-transmission in chronological order:

1) When the World-Honored One preached to human and heavenly beings in front of the Stūpa of Many Sons, Kāśyapa arrived late. The World-Honored One shared his seat with him. (Another version says that the World-Honored One shared his seat with Kāśyapa and put a golden robe on him). The audience was puzzled.

世尊在多子塔前 爲人天說法 迦葉後到 世尊遂分座令坐
(一本云分座令坐以金臝圍之) 大衆罔措．


299 Ibid., 87.

300 Sŏnmun yŏmsong sŏrhwa 2, HPC 5, 50c14-17.

301 Sŏnmun yŏmsong sŏrhwa 1, HPC 5, 012c17-013a02.
2) When the World-Honored One preached on Vulture Peak, four kinds of flowers rained from the sky. The World-Honored One held up and showed one of the flowers to audience. Kāśyapa smiled. The World-Honored One said, “I have the treasury of the true Dharma eye. I entrust it to Mahākāśyapa!” (Another version says that when the World-Honored One looked back at Kāśyapa with the eyes of the blue lotus, Kāśyapa smiled).³⁰²

3) The seven days had already passed after the World-Honored one entered nirvāṇa beneath the two śāla trees. The great Kāśyapa arrived late and walked around the coffin three times. The World-Honored One showed his feet out of the coffin. Kāśyapa bowed down. The audience was puzzled.³⁰³

These episodes, which were already well-known in Song China and Koryó Korea, were called “sharing the seat,” “holding up a flower,” and “showing the feet out of a coffin” in abbreviation.³⁰⁴ Kagun designated these three episodes collectively as the “three places of mind-transmission.” This notion that the Buddha transmitted his mind to Kāśyapa in these three different times and places was popularized, in particular, in Korea. For example, the

---

³⁰² *Ibid.*, HPC 5, 014a03-a07.

³⁰³ *Sŏnmun yŏmsong sŏrhwaw*, 2, HPC 5, 050a09-a12.

³⁰⁴ These three episodes were clearly well-known in the Song Chan community as seen in Yuanwu’s mention of the first two transmissions and Ciming’s allusion of the third transmission episode (*Chanlin sengbao chuan* 禪林僧寶傳 21, X1560.79.533a12-13). Although Welter and Foulk demonstrate well that Song Chan masters used and developed the second transmission episode “holding up a flower” to establish Chan as a special transmission outside teaching, it needs further research to find out whether they employed all these three episodes for that purpose. However, it is certain that since Kagun, the Korean Sŏn masters have often used the collective term “three places of mind-transmission” in relation to the independent Sŏn identity. For details, see Welter 2000: 75-109 and Foulk 1999: 220-294.
renowned sixteenth century Korean Sŏn master Hyujŏng (1520-1604), mentioning all these three transmissions, affirmed that the lamp of Sŏn was transmitted to Kāśyapa in these places. ³⁰⁵

The notion of the Buddha’s three transmissions of mind inevitably raises the questions of the very nature of the mind-transmissions: Did the Buddha transmit the same mind to Kāśyapa in these different times and places? If so, what reason or need would there be for the Buddha to do so? If not, what different mind did the Buddha transmit to Kāśyapa in each time and place? It was generally accepted that the same mind had been transmitted in these different places as Paek’pa admits in his Sŏnmun sugyŏng.³⁰⁶ Hence, this notion of the Buddha’s three mind-transmissions also served to legitimize the Chan/ Sŏn claim for its own unique identity. However, the question of why the Buddha had transmitted the same mind to Kāśyapa in the three different times and places remained unsolved. In fact, this question functioned as one of the gong’ans just as Yuanwu Keqin said, “By sharing his seat [with Kāśyapa] in front of the Stūpa of Many Sons, Śākyamuni already transmitted this seal secretly. Thereafter, he held up a flower. This is the second-level gong’an!” (釋迦文多子塔前分座 已密授此印 爾後拈花 第二重公案).³⁰⁷

Paek’pa shed the new light on this issue of the nature of the Buddha’s mind transmissions. He asserted that the Buddha had transmitted different minds or different levels of mind in different times and places. According to Paek’pa, the Buddha’s mind was

³⁰⁵ Sŏn’ga kwigam HPC 7, 635b09-13.
³⁰⁶ Sŏnmun sugyŏng, HPC 10, 519b02-06.
³⁰⁷ Foguo yuanwu zhenjue chanshi xinyao 佛果圜悟真覺禪師心要: X1357.69.457a24-b01; Yuanwu’s words are also recorded in the Sŏnmun yŏmsong sŏrhwa 2: HPC 5, 050c17-20.
transmitted partially in the first place while it was transmitted fully both in the second and third places. Then, he correlated the first two transmissions to his Sŏn taxonomy. He said:

Of the three transmission places, the first “sharing the seat” is true emptiness and the “single-edged sword to kill people.” This is the second of the three statements, which represents the original share as well as leading-upward. Since this only transmits the immutability of true suchness, it only kills, not gives life……The second place of “holding up a flower” is the wondrous existences and the “double-edged sword to give life people.” This is the first statement which represents the three essentials of capacity (killing) and function (giving life), as well as true emptiness…and the wondrous existence of leading upward…This is equipped with both killing and giving life.  

三處傳中 第一分座(眞空)殺人刀 即三句中第二句本分及向上 則但傳不變眞如 唯殺無活……第二處拈華(妙有)活人劒 即第一句機(殺)用(活)三要及向上眞空…妙有…則具足殺活.

By connecting the first two mind-transmissions to Linji’s first and second statements, Paekp’a established the following correspondences: sharing the seat, true emptiness, the single-edged sword that kills people, the second statement, immutability, killing, on the one hand; holding up a flower, true emptiness and wondrous existence, the double-edged sword that gives life people, the first statement, immutability and conditionality, killing and giving life, on the other hand.

Table 6. First two mind-transmissions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>first transmission</th>
<th>second transmission</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sharing the seat</td>
<td>holding up a flower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true emptiness</td>
<td>true emptiness and wondrous existence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single-edged sword that kills people</td>
<td>double-edged sword that gives life people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second statement</td>
<td>first statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immutability</td>
<td>immutability and conditionality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>killing</td>
<td>killing and saving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

308 Sŏnmun sugyŏng, HPC 10, 520b10-16.
Paekp’a provided little explanation for his correlation, which seems rather arbitrary. He simply added that “sharing the seat” is the “seat of the teaching of emptiness” and that “holding up a flower” is “wondrous existence.” In my opinion, since the “seat of the teaching of emptiness” is the appellation for the seat of the tathāgata in the tenth chapter of the *Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra*, the first transmission “sharing the seat” is true emptiness since the Buddha shared with Kāśyapa his own seat, the seat only eligible for those who perfectly realize the teaching of emptiness; on the other hand, “holding up a flower” is the wondrous existence since this episode shows the Buddha’s wisdom in his wondrous and spontaneous act of holding up a flower of the flower-rains.

In the above quotation, Paekp’a also employed the analogies of “a single-edged sword that kills people” (K. *sarīn to* 殺人刀) and “a double-edged sword that gives life people” (K. *hwārin kōm* 活人劍) to show the superiority of “holding up a flower” to “sharing the seat.” These two analogies almost always appear in conjunction with each other in Chan texts. Though never fully explained, each symbolizes the different aspects of wisdom. With its single edge, the “single-edged sword that kills people” represents one dimensional functioning of

---


310 *Miafa lianhua jing* 妙法蓮華經 Fashi pin 法師品: T262.9.31c27.

311 As Ch’o’ui points out, Kagun first connected the first transmission to the single-edged sword and the second transmission to the double-edged sword though he gave little explanation. For Kagun’s connection, see *Sŏnmun yŏmsong sŏnhwa* 2, HPC 5, 51a03-17.

312 The analogies of these two types of sword were well-known in the Song Chan community. The analogies are recorded in many recorded sayings of such eminent masters of this time as Yuanwu, Dahui, and Hongzhi (1091-1157) as well as such *gong’an* collections of the *Blue Cliff Record* and the *Gateless Barrier*.  

151
wisdom that would only “kill the defilements” on the basis of the truth of emptiness. On the other hand, with its extra edge, the “double-edged sword that gives life people” represents the dual dimensional functioning of wisdom that would not only remove all the defilements but also allow one to act lively or freely in accord with conditions without attachment. Hence, the single-edged sword could correspond to realizing the immutable aspect of suchness while the double-edged sword, to realizing both immutable and conditional aspects. With these analogies, Paekp’a affirmed that “holding up a flower” should be superior to “sharing the seat.”

Such a bold claim of Paekp’a on the mind transmissions in fact draws on the same rationale that is often used in various doctrinal taxonomies. For example, Zhiyi’s taxonomy supposed five different periods in which the Buddha gave instructions in five different levels of teachings: the Buddha’s teaching was gradually refined over five different periods of his career and finally culminated in the fifth period when he instructed the Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra. In his taxonomy, Zhiyi argued that the Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra was supreme since it not only teaches the ultimate truth but also employs various skillful means which the Buddha had acquired over his career in response to the conditions of the sentient beings. What Zhiyi intended in his taxonomy was obviously to promote his Tiantai school by upholding the Saddharmapuṇḍarīka-sūtra, the school’s main scripture, as supreme. By arguing that the Buddha transmitted different levels of mind in different times and places, Paekp’a achieved the same goal as Zhiyi’s: the Linji/ Imje Sŏn is promoted into the highest level in which the mind of the Buddha holding up a flower has been transmitted.

313 The analogy of the wisdom as the sword of “killing or destroying the defilements” is often used in Buddhist texts. For example, see the Vimalakīrtinirdeśasūtra 維摩詰所說經 3 (T475.14.554b21-22) and the Abhidharmavibhāṣāstra 阿毘曇毘婆沙論 (T1546.28.360a01).

3) The analogy of a genuine-gold store and a general merchandise store

Paek’pa employed another analogy to claim Linji’s superiority, on the basis of its realization of the wondrous functioning of wisdom: a genuine-gold store and a general merchandise store. The analogy first appears in the episode of Daowu Yuanzhi 道吾圓智 (769-835) and Yunyan Tansheng 雲岩昙晟 (780-841) in the Zutang ji, which reveals the rivalry between the Shitou and Mazu lineages. Paek’pa reinterpreted this analogy from the perspective of a different lineage rivalry to support his polemical claim. Let me first give an outline of the episode from the Zutang ji.

Daowu and Yunyan were brothers who had long been separated. Daowu became a government official while Yunyan became a monk at a young age and studied under Baizhang Huaihai 百丈懷海 (720-814). One day, Daowu happened to visit a hut in Mt. Baizhang and met his long-separated brother Yunyan. Shortly after their reunion, Daowu decided to become a monk and received the precepts at forty six. After studying a year with his brother under Baizhang, Daowu went to Yaoshan Weiyan 藥山惟儼 (751-834) and became his student. Daowu experienced a breakthrough in his training and immediately sent a letter to Yunyan in which he urged Yunyan to come to study under Yaoshan since “Shitou is a genuine-gold store while Jiangxi [Mazu] is a general merchandise store” (石頭是眞金舖 江西是雜貨舖). Then, Yunyan also came to Yaoshan and became his student.

As Ishii Shūdō and Ui Hakuju point out, this episode is not a historical fact. Since Daowu’s secular surname was Zhang and Yunyan’s was Wang, they were not brothers. Daowu

---

315 Zutang ji 4 K45.262a23-a24.
316 Ibid., K45.261c24-262c01.
also became a novice monk at a young age and studied under Baizhang Fazheng 百丈法政, not Baizhang Huaihai.\textsuperscript{317} However, whether this episode is historically true or not, it clearly shows the sectarian rivalry between the Shitou and Mazu lineages, involving a polemical claim to promote one lineage over the other. In this episode, the claim takes the issue of the efficiency of the teachings of the two lineages: Yunyan had little progress in his training although he had long studied with Baizhang Huaihai, whose master was Mazu; on the contrary, his brother Daowu saw a significant progress not long after he studied under Yaoshan, whose master was Shitou. The analogy in Daowu’s letter directly reveals the intention of this episode to criticize the Mazu lineage and promote the Shitou lineage: just as a general merchandise store would distract the customers with its various goods and thus make it hard for them to find the genuine gold, the Mazu masters’ instructions would make students go astray in their Buddhist training; on the contrary, just as a genuine-gold store only sells genuine gold, the Shitou masters instruct only the most valuable core of the Buddhist teachings and lead students to enlightenment.\textsuperscript{318}

The Zutang ji, however, also records Yangshan Huiji’s interpretation of the analogy to overturn its original intent. Yangshan says,

\begin{quote}
I will get rid of all your coarse knowledge which has been cumulated from countless eons by provisionally employing the skillful means….just as a person puts together a hundred kinds of merchandise, gold and precious things in a store, and only sells them by measuring the lightness and the heaviness of the customers. Although Shitou is said
\end{quote}


\textsuperscript{318} The description of the Mazu lineage as a convenience store in this episode is in fact not baseless. The Mazu teachings emphasize “external functioning” rather than “internal essence” of mind: it was through various functions of mind that innate suchness is manifested. Thus, in its practice, there is nothing needed to be cultivated or cut off. One has only to allow internal enlightenment to operate spontaneously and let his mind respond to the conditions without disrupting the flow of the Way. As Zongmi criticized, such Mazu’s argument would be a hindrance for unenlightened students who have dualistic thought because of its possible antinomianism. The analogy of a convenience store for the Mazu lineage reflects such criticism. For details of the Mazu teaching, see, Buswell 1987: 338-343, Jia 2006: 67-82, and Poceski 2007: 157-192; for Zongmi’s criticism of Mazu, see Gregory 2002: 236-244.
to be a genuine-gold store, I am a general merchandise store. For this reason, when a person comes and seeks for a general item, I will give it to him. When a person seeks for gold, I will give it to him as well.\textsuperscript{319}

所以假設方便 奪汝諸人塵劫來麤識…如人將百種貨物 雜渾金寶一鋪貨 賣祗擬輕重來機 所以道石頭是真金鋪 我者裏是雜貨鋪 有人來覓雜貨鋪 則我亦拈他 與來覓黃金 我亦與他。

Here, a general merchandise store refers to the functioning of wisdom with which a master could employ various skillful means in accord with students’ spiritual capabilities. On the contrary, a genuine-gold store refers to the lack of such functioning of wisdom.

Probably in light of Yangshan’s new perspective on the analogy, Paep’a placed this analogy into a different sectarian rivalry to promote the Linji school. He said:

Do you want to know Qingyuan?…..[He represents] the mind-transmission of a genuine-gold store and the single-edged sword that kills people…Do you want to know Huairang?…[He represents] the mind-transmission of a general merchandise store and the double-edged sword that gives life people.\textsuperscript{320}

要識靑原麽……真金鋪殺人刀傳心也…要識讓師麽…雜貨鋪活人劒傳心也.

Here, Paekp’a argued that Nanyue Huairang 南嶽懷讓 (677-744) is superior to Qingyuan Xingsi 清源行思 (d. 740). Qingyuan is a genuine-gold store which lacks the functioning of wisdom since he only realizes the truth of mind partially; Nanyue is a general merchandise store which carries various functioning of wisdom since he realizes the truth fully and perfectly. Such Paekp’a’s claim on the superiority of Nanyue to Qingyuan is in fact related to the sectarian rivalry between the Linji and Caodong schools which involved Linji masters’ manipulation of the Chan lineage as a polemical tool to promote their lineage over the Caodong lineage. The Song Linji master Huihong argued in the Linjian lu that the four main lineages of the Linji,

\begin{footnotes}
\item[319] \textit{Zutang ji} 18 K45.345c14-c18.
\item[320] \textit{Susŏn kyŏlsa mun} HPC 10, 534b15-c05.
\end{footnotes}
Weiyang, Fayan, and Yunmen had originated from Mazu, the disciple of Nanyue. Whatever Huihong’s original intention was, his argument was interpreted as a polemical claim to promote the Linji lineage by upholding Mazu as a common lineage ancestor of the four major Chan lineages and at the same time marginalizing the rival Caodong lineage from the majority of the five Chan houses. Although eventually dismissed as false later in the Qing and Chosŏn period, this lineage claim was supported immediately by Zhang Shangying 張商英 (1043-1121), the renowned lay patron for the Linji school, and transmitted separately from the official version of the Chan lineage in the Jingde chuandeng lu. For example, Hyujŏng accepted this claim and promoted the Linji school in his Sŏn’ga kwigam; the Qing Linji master Feiyin Tongrong 費隱通容 (1593-1662) composed the Wudeng yantong 五燈嚴統, the representative text for this claim, which would trigger the legal battle between the Linji and Caodong masters in the early Qing period.\footnote{For Hyujŏng’s view on the lineages of the five houses, see Sŏn’ga kwigam HPC 7, 644b04-c04; for more details on this lineage claim and the Qing debate and legal battle, see Kim Ho-gwi 2009:111-160 and Jiang Wu 2008: 188-223} It is uncertain if Paekp’a was aware of the Qing debate. However, Paekp’a elsewhere accepted this claim, affirming that the four lineages of Linji, Weiyang, Fayan, and Yunmen originated from Nanyue.\footnote{Susŏn kyŏlsa mun HPC 10 534b02-03.} Hence, what Paekp’a really intended in the above quotation is to promote the Linji lineage. By describing Nanyue and Qingyuan respectively as a general merchandise store and a genuine-gold store, Paekp’a accomplished the intent of this polemical lineage claim for the Linji school, which developed in the context of the Linji and Caodong sectarian rivalry: the Linji lineage is the supreme of all Sŏn lineages because the lineage, just like a general merchandise store, transmits the wisdom, which not only removes all the attachments but also allows one to respond spontaneously in accord to various conditions.
As we have seen so far, Paekp’a’s taxonomy purports to promote the Linji school with which the Korean Sŏn tradition of the Chosŏn period was affiliated. For this purpose, Paekp’a interpreted such existing notions within the Korean Sŏn tradition as patriarch Sŏn/ tathāgata Sŏn, mind-transmission, genuine-gold store/ general merchandise store. Another intention of his taxonomy, as mentioned before, is to integrate the Korean Sŏn soteriology into the Linji tradition, to be discussed in the following section.

3. Paekp’a’s Taxonomy and Chinul’s Three Mysteries: Paekp’a’s Soteriology

As seen in chapter two, Korean Sŏn Buddhism of Paekp’a’s time established the kanhwa practice within Chinul’s schema of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation.” This system relies mainly on Chinul’s interpretation of the three mysteries in the Chŏryŏ: a novice student begins his Buddhist training with doctrinal studies of the “mystery in the essence,” proceeds to the kanhwa technique of the “mystery in the word,” and eventually achieves enlightenment of the “mystery in the mystery.” In the Susŏn kyŏlsa mun, Paep’a correlated Chinul’s three mysteries with his three kinds of Sŏn, which draws on Linji’s teaching. By doing so, Paekp’a not only placed the Korean Sŏn soteriology within the Linji tradition, but also justified its implication for the Sŏn and Kyo relationship through the authority of Linji. Paekp’a’s connection of these two seemingly opposite traditions also inevitably transforms the Linji identity.

1) The integration of the Korean Sŏn soteriology into the Linji school

According to Paekp’a, Chinul’s three mysteries, which represent the Korean Sŏn soteriology, correspond to the three-fold taxonomy. Paep’a first linked Chinul’s “mystery in the essence” to principle Sŏn of the Heze lineage:

157
Since this master [Heze Shenhui] did not destroy intellectual understanding [in which he designated the inevitable truth of mind as] the “original source” or the “Buddha-nature,” he entered into the awakening with the dead word. Therefore, he was the founding master of principle Sŏn and became a secondary son of the Sixth Patriarch. However, since his understanding was lofty and clear, he comprised the tenets of all the Buddhist canons of Sŏn and Kyo with the four words of “empty tranquil numinous awareness.” This is like what the Duxu and the Chŏryo elucidate. This is the principle of the “mystery in the essence” mentioned above. Many of the sentient beings of the latter age enter into awakening, following the principle. What Guifeng [Zongmi] and Mog’u [Chinul] described is nothing other than this.323

Here, Paekp’a devalued the Heze school as an illegitimate heir of the true Sŏn lineage by depicting Shenhui as a secondary son (C. niezi, K. ólcha 孽子), who has no legitimate right to inherit the family lineage. According to Paep’a, this is because people of the Heze lineage do not fully realize the secretly-transmitted truth of the Chan/ Sŏn lineage and thus inevitably distort the truth by reifying it. This level of principle Sŏn corresponds to the “mystery in the essence,” of which the doctrinal descriptions only produce conceptual understanding and never bring about true enlightenment. However, according to Paekp’a, despite the innate incompetence in effectuating enlightenment, principle Sŏn or the first mystery contributes to spiritual development with its clear understanding of mind. Hence, it becomes a necessary part of his soteriological path. In particular, Paekp’a argued that principle Sŏn laid the firm foundation for the subsequent Buddhist training. Quoting Chinul’s words, he warned the danger of ignoring this prerequisite condition for the Sŏn practice:

Did Mog’uja not tell this? “I have observed that people of the present time who are cultivating their minds do not depend on the guidance of the written teachings, but straightaway assume that the successive transmission of the esoteric idea [of Sŏn] is the path. They then sit around dozing with their minds in a haze, their labors all in vain, or

323 Susŏn kyŏlsamun HPC 10, 534a03-09.
else they lose their presence of mind in agitation and confusion during their practice of meditation. For these reasons, I feel you should follow words and teachings which were expounded in accordance with reality in order to determine the proper procedure in regard to awakening and cultivation. Once you mirror your own minds, you may contemplate with insight at all times, without wasting any of your efforts.” In my opinion, what this master said is truly right and perfectly wondrous. His view of the manner [of cultivating the Buddhist practices] and presentation of the instructions are most mature and proper.

For Paekp’a, the mistakes or the difficulties during the Sŏn training described above are caused by paying no attention to principle Sŏn. Paekp’a, who probably saw the mistakes of Sŏn practitioners of Chinul’s time also made by those of his time, emphasized the necessity of principle Sŏn: a student should orient himself in the path toward enlightenment on the basis of the doctrinal teachings in order to avoid the above-quoted mistakes and have benefits from the subsequent Sŏn practice. Paekp’a specified the merits that could receive from the conceptual understanding of principle Sŏn: the student would “no longer raise the mind of ‘desire and dislike’ and ‘victory and defeat’ by knowing that the nature of mind is inherenently pure and defilements are empty in nature” (以知心性本淨 煩惱本空故 不起憎愛勝負之心).325

Nonetheless, as mentioned above, this principle Sŏn of the first mystery inevitably generates conceptual defilements, caused by habituations and cannot directly lead to the final goal. Therefore, another stage is necessary to remove such hindrances.

For Paekp’a, kanhwa Sŏn practice is the “mystery of the word” to serve this purpose.

Following the lead of Chinul, he distinguished the practice into two types of investigation:

324 Ibid., HPC 10, 531c14-20. Chinul’s words are from the Chŏryo. The translation for Chinul’s words is quoted from Buswell 1983: 263-264.

325 Ibid., HPC 10, 533b07-08.
investigation of the meaning (K. *ch’amŭi* 參意) or investigation of the word (K. *ch’amgu* 參句) of the *hwadu*.\textsuperscript{326} The investigation of the meaning takes the intellectual approach to the *hwadu*: a student attempts to figure out the meaning of the *hwadu* or the intent of the *hwadu* intellectually. For example, as Buswell explains, in the case of the Zhaozhou’s “*mu*” (C. *wu* 無) *hwadu*, a student explores such questions that carry intellectual curiosity or “taste” (C. *wei*, K. *mi* 味) as “With what intent in mind did Zhaozhou make the statement *mu*?” or “What state of mind did Zhaozhou have when he makes the *mu* statement?”\textsuperscript{327} In this investigation, a student relies on the knowledge and skills that he obtains through the doctrinal studies: as Chinul pointed out, even though the student cultivates with less or non-conceptual *hwadu*, he is just like the people who study in the Complete and Sudden gate of the doctrinal studies.\textsuperscript{328} Eventually, the student ends up with sticking on the level of principle Sŏn. Thus, he needs the investigation of the word itself in order to proceed in his Buddhist training. This investigation of a tasteless word refers to abandoning the intellectual search for the meaning or intent of the *hwadu* and just looking at the word of the *hwadu*. In this type of investigation, one simply has a single-pointed mind on the word without attempting to intellectually think through it.

Paekp’a, again like Chinul, linked these two types of investigation to the dead word and the live word: the *hwadu* word of the investigation of the meaning is the dead word because this intellectual approach leads only to conceptual understanding and even cannot save the practitioner himself; the *hwadu* word of the investigation of the word is the live word because

\textsuperscript{326} For Paekp’a’s accounts for these two types of investigation, see *Susŏn kyŏlsamun* HPC 10, 538a18-24; For Chinul’s accounts, see Buswell 1983: 252-253.

\textsuperscript{327} Buswell 1986: 220.

\textsuperscript{328} Buswell 1983: 252 and 1986: 220.
this tasteless approach frees a student from the conceptual obstruction and consummates the practitioner’s spiritual development.\textsuperscript{329} For Paekp’a, the investigation of the word is the true way of cultivating the short-cut gate (K. kyŏngjŏl mun 徑截門). Paekp’a advised a student who now faces the hwadu word to guard himself from the habitual tendency that operates on the level of the “mystery in the essence” and makes him fall for the intellectual taste in the word of the hwadu. He rather urged the student to undertake the investigation of the word of the hwadu.\textsuperscript{330}

This investigation of the word is correlated with tathāgata Sŏn in Paekp’a’s three-fold soteriology. He said:

\begin{quote}
You should know that the wisdom of “emptiness and calmness” is empty and calm as well. In the middle of such emptiness and calmness of no-thought, only one-thought will be manifested in one’s mind. [Right then, one should] investigate the tasteless live word which is outside the format.\textsuperscript{331}
\end{quote}

Paekp’a regarded the “investigation of the word” as the practice which is cultivated with the realization that the teaching of emptiness itself is empty. Even if one removes most of his attachments by realizing the teaching of emptiness through the doctrinal descriptions of nature and phenomena of mind, he still has the attachment to the very teaching of emptiness. Hence, in order to cultivate true kanhwa Sŏn practice, a student has to realize that the teaching itself is also empty and remove the attachment to that teaching. This level of realization of the truth of emptiness is equivalent to that of tathāgata Sŏn which is characterized by the realization of true emptiness.

\textsuperscript{329} For Chinul’s link of the two types of investigation to the live and dead words, see Buswell 1986: 221.

\textsuperscript{330} See Susŏn kyŏlsamun HPC 10, 538a18-24.

\textsuperscript{331} Susŏn kyŏlsa mun HPC 10, 536a07-09.
In the above quotation, Paekp’a also endorsed Chinul’s scheme of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation” by linking the kanhwa Sŏn of the second mystery to “no-thought.” The notion of no-thought, introduced first in the Platform Sūtra of the Sixth Patriarch, occupies an important place in the Chan and Sŏn soteriology. According to Buswell, this notion means to be “non-dualistic, not distinguishing between wrong thoughts…and right thoughts” or to allow “the mind to flow freely, without any of the obstructions or value judgements that would impede the Dao.” More importantly, no-thought is defined by the Heze affiliated masters as one of the important features of the practice followed by sudden enlightenment. For example, Chinul said as follows:

Nonetheless, although you must cultivate further, you have already awakened suddenly to the fact that deluded thoughts are originally void and the mind-nature is originally pure. Thus you eliminate evil, but you eliminate without really eliminating anything; you cultivate the wholesome, but you cultivate without really cultivating anything either. This is true cultivation and true elimination. For this reason it is said, “Although one prepares to cultivate the manifold supplementary practices, no-thought is the origin of them all.”

By connecting the kanhwa Sŏn technique to no-thought, Paekp’a defined the technique as belonging to gradual cultivation, the second stage of Chinul’s soteriological path. Paekp’a, therefore, identified his three-fold Sŏn taxonomy with Chinul’s schema of “sudden enlightenment followed by the gradual cultivation.” In this soteriological model, a student would attain the understanding-awakening through doctrinal descriptions of the reality, proceed

---

333 Ibid., 333.
334 Susim kyŏl, HPC 4, 711b07-b10: The translation is quoted from Buswell 1983: 148-149 with small alterations.
to the investigation of the word of the *hwadu* on the basis of the realization of true emptiness, and finally reach the realization-awakening.

For Paek’ap’a, this realization-awakening is the mystery in the mystery or the level of patriarch Sŏn. Paek’ap’a regarded this level as the final stage of his three-fold journey to enlightenment rather than such non-linguistic expressions as silence, shouting, and beating. According to Paek’ap’a, on this final level, a practitioner sees the “place of comforting his body and establishing his life” (*C. anshen liming chu, K. anmysŏn ch’ŏ* 安身立命處) of both himself and the Buddhas and patriarchs.\(^{335}\) The practitioner finally enters into the level of patriarch Sŏn, becoming a legitimate heir of the Sixth Patriarch Huineng. On this level, one fully and completely realizes the immutable and conditional aspects of mind as well as the universal presence of these two aspects within all sentient beings without any trace of conceptual defilements.

Paek’ap’a’s three-fold soteriology could be regarded as the Linji recension of Chinul’s three mysteries.\(^{336}\) As seen before, on the basis of Linji’s teaching, Paek’ap’a presented the soteriological path which consists of three stages: the first, second, and third statements or

---

\(^{335}\) *Susŏn kyŏlsa mun* HPC 10, 536b09-11.

\(^{336}\) Yugyŏng argues that Paek’ap’a’s three mysteries in the *Susŏn kyŏlsa mun* refer to Linji’s three mysteries and that these mysteries represent his soteriology. She also connects Paek’ap’a’s three mysteries to Chinul’s three gates of “*wŏndon sinhae,*” “*kanhwa kyŏngjŏl,*” and “*sŏngjŏk tŭngji.*” In my opinion, Paek’ap’a used two different concepts of the three mysteries. In the *Susŏn kyŏlsa mun*, he used Chinul’s mysteries and linked them to Linji’s three statements, not three mysteries, though Chinul explicitly denied the connection of his mysteries to Linji’s teaching. In the *Sŏnmun sugyŏng*, Paep’a used Ch’ŏnch’aek’s interpretation for Linji’s three mysteries to refer to the level of the tathāgata Sŏn. If Paek’ap’a’s three mystery soteriology in the *Susŏn kyŏlsa mun* explains Linji’s three mysteries as Yu argues, this soteriology would just lead to the middle level of realization of the truth, which is in fact contrary to Paek’ap’a’s argument that the *kanhwa* technique leads to the full and perfect enlightenment, as will be seen later in this chapter. Chinul also did not refer to the so-called “three gates” as constituting one single soteriology. For details of Yu’s argument, see Yugyŏng 2003: 63-75; for Chinul’s “three gates,” see Ingyŏng 2002: 166-216.
patriarch, tathāgata, and principle Sŏns. By connecting this three-fold path to Chinul’s three mysteries, Paekp’a embraced the Korean Sŏn soteriology into the Linji tradition. In this soteriology, tathāgata Sŏn and principle Sŏn are not dismissed as wrong. Rather, they are regarded as constituting the path toward the final stage of patriarch Sŏn. Even principle Sŏn, criticized harshly by the Linji masters, is accepted as a necessary stage in order to achieve this final goal. The connection of Paekp’a’s taxonomy and Chinul’s three mysteries may be charted as follows:

Table 7. Soteriologies of Paekp’a and Chinul

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Linji’s three statements</th>
<th>sudden awakening</th>
<th>gradual cultivation</th>
<th>Paekp’a’s taxonomy</th>
<th>Chinul’s three mysteries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>first statement</td>
<td>realization-awakening</td>
<td>patriarch Sŏn</td>
<td>Mystery in the mystery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second statement</td>
<td>gradual cultivation</td>
<td>tathāgata Sŏn</td>
<td>Mystery in the word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>third statement</td>
<td>Understanding-awakening</td>
<td>Principle Sŏn</td>
<td>Mystery in the essence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2) Sŏn and Kyo in Paekp’a’s soteriology

Paekp’a’s three-fold soteriological system not only reveals the Korean Buddhist view of the Sŏn and Kyo relationship but also legitimizes this view through the authority of Linji’s teaching. In this system, Sŏn, which is represented by tathāgata and patriarch Sŏns, occupies the pre-eminent position over Kyo, which is represented by principle Sŏn. Although Paekp’a mentioned the complementarity between Sŏn and Kyo, Kyo always plays a preparatory role for Sŏn in this relationship. Kyo helps Sŏn practice efficiently by mapping out the path toward enlightenment: with the direction presented by Kyo, a novice student would not go astray along

---

337 Sŏnmun sugyŏng HPC 10, 524a11-15: here, Paek’pa referred to Sŏn to “seeing” (K. kan 看) and Kyo to “speaking” (K. sŏl 說). He argued that both of them are indispensable since they are just like eyes and legs for a person.
the path and could reach his goal. In particular, according to Paekp’a, Kyo nurtures the true eye (C. zhengyan, K. chŏngan 正眼) for a student to discern what is wholesome or unwholesome and have the subsequent practices successful “as if a person cooks a meal with rice rather than sand.”\(^\text{338}\) However, for him, the role of Kyo always remains limited in the matter of achieving enlightenment because it is unable to lead directly to the ultimate goal beyond the realm of concepts due to its very nature of conceptualizing the ineffable.

According to Paekp’a, it is only through Sŏn that the goal could be achieved. He presented scriptural sources to emphasize this exclusive role or faculty of Sŏn to bring about enlightenment. To give a couple of examples:

(1) The Mahāprajñāpāramitā-śāstra says, “When one seeks for the shallow affairs of the mundane world, he could not achieve the work if he does not focus his energies. How much is this the case when it comes to learning the unsurpassed wisdom without cultivating Sŏn meditation?”\(^\text{339}\)

(2) The Mahāsaṃnipata-sūtra says, “Calm and still is the unconditioned realm of the Buddhas. There, one could attain the pure bodhi. If there is a person who slanders the seated meditation, he will be called a person who slanders all the Tathāgatas.”\(^\text{340}\)

This complementary and yet subordinate relationship between Sŏn and Kyo in regard to achieving the Buddhist soteriological goal in fact has a long pedigree in Korea. As seen in chapter two, since it was first suggested by Chinul, such relationship has become the hallmark of Korean Buddhism, except in the late Koryŏ period. In particular, Hyujŏng explained this

\(^{338}\) Susŏn kyōlsa mun HPC 10, 532c06-10.

\(^{339}\) Ibid., HPC 10, 542a13-14; Dazhidu lun (Mahāprajñāpāramitā-śāstra) 17, T1509.25.180c12-13.

\(^{340}\) Ibid., HPC 10, 542a18-20; Da făngdeng daji jing (Mahāsaṃnipata-sūtra) 46, T397.13.303a12-13.
relationship by employing the analogy of a king and vassals, which Paekp’ā also employed in his Susŏn kyŏlsa mun.\textsuperscript{341} In this analogy, a king corresponds to Sŏn, the vassals, to Kyo.

For Paekp’ā, the Sŏn practice that will lead to enlightenment is the kanhwa Sŏn rather then any other forms of the Sŏn practice:

>A ball of doubt manifests alone, vast and unbenighted…Even if one acts, he abides deeply in that mark [of a ball], not losing voidness and brightness just as if he protects an infant…If he could do like this…, how could this be compared with the foolish Sŏn of abiding in silence in vain or with merely seeking for the mad wisdom that pursues words?\textsuperscript{342}

疑團獨露 廓然不昧…雖有所作 如護嬰兒 不失虛明湛然相住…若能如是…豈比夫空守默之癡禪 但尋文之狂慧者也.

Here, “abiding in silence in vain” and “seeking for the mad wisdom that pursues words” could refer to two different approaches to Sŏn: the silent illumination Sŏn and the literary Sŏn.

Paekp’ā clearly promoted kanhwa Sŏn over these two approaches which he seems to regard as inefficient, if not wrong. For him, the true Sŏn practice that could result in enlightenment is kanhwa Sŏn.

Even though he emphasized the kanhwa Sŏn technique just like such Korean Sŏn masters as Chinul and Hyujŏng, Paep’ā made a unique claim in relation to its applicability. According to Paekp’ā, the kanhwa technique should be applied universally to all students, not just to the specific ones as mistakenly claimed before. He even argued that the technique is in particular for those with the mid and low spiritual capabilities while it is not needed for the people of the high capability because when these people face the hwadu word, they would

\textsuperscript{341} In Hyujŏng’s Sŏngyo sŏk 禪敎釋, the analogy was recorded as originating from the Silla monk Muyŏm 無染 (800-888): HPC 7, 656a20-b01; for Paekp’ā use of the analogy, see Susŏn kyŏlsa mun HPC 10, 541a07-13.

\textsuperscript{342} Susŏn kyŏlsa mun HPC 10, 542c17-23.
immediately attain enlightenment without the need of investigating it.\textsuperscript{343} However, Paekp’a elsewhere maintained that this three-fold Sŏn soteriology is the “only path toward the gate to \textit{nirvāṇa}” and that those who believe, understand, and uphold this teaching are the people of the highest spiritual capability.\textsuperscript{344} Hence, for Paekp’a, this \textit{kanhwa} Sŏn technique is for the students of all spiritual capabilities. Such Paekp’a’s view of the applicability of the technique contradicts Chinul and Hyujŏng’s view that the technique aims only for those who have the highest spiritual capability while those of the inferior capability need different practices that would be easy for them to follow.\textsuperscript{345} Paekp’a himself raised a possible opposition that would come from such a viewpoint as follows:

Someone says, “When I look at what is said above one by one, [I understand that you urge] students to see the nature by investigating the tasteless and clueless ‘mystery in the word’ after firmly believing and understanding the ‘mystery in the essence’ that the nature of mind is originally pure and the defilements are originally empty...If you want the foolish and dull people of inferior spiritual capability in the latter age to do this, how would it be different from blaming a mosquito which is carrying Mt. Tai on its back?\textsuperscript{346}"

Paekp’a explained the universal necessity of \textit{kanhwa} practice, criticizing this opposition of distrusting the only path toward \textit{nirvāṇa}. According to Paekp’a, the so-called “the practices for the latter age” such as worshipping the Buddhas, repenting, making Buddha images, temples, and pagodas would have efficacy only in the realm of the karmic law since they generate good

\textsuperscript{343} \textit{Ibid.}, HPC 10, 536b05-13.

\textsuperscript{344} \textit{Ibid.}, HPC 10, 540c01 and 543b19-21.

\textsuperscript{345} For Chinul’s reference to the applicability of the technique, see Chinul, \textit{Kanhwa kyŏrũi ron} (Buswell 1983: 240); for Hyujŏng’s, see \textit{Sŏngyo kyŏl} 禪敎訣 HPC 7, 658a05-09.

\textsuperscript{346} \textit{Susŏn kyŏlsa mun} HPC 10, 540b06-11.
karmic fruits and would lead to a better rebirth. Paek’pa asserted that these practices would never be able to bring about enlightenment, which transcends the karmic law and saves sentient beings out of the endless cycle of birth-and-death just as “the Buddhist pagodas built by the Liang Emperor Wu eventually ended up generating no merits” (梁武佛塔 終歸於片無功德). Nonetheless, Paek’pa did not argue that such practices should be abandoned entirely since some people favor these practices because of their habitual tendency. Instead, he urged these people to apply the kankwa approach to their practices. He explained this approach, taking an example of worshipping Buddhas:

Whenever you bow, move your body slowly, shake off defilements from your thought, and trace back the radiance and illuminate. Kneel and Bend your upper body. Bow your head and look up. When the leader recites first, echo the recitation, thinking what is this thing that is worshipping?

每於拜時 徐徐動身抖擞精神 回光返照 能如是折旋俯仰唱和禮拜者 甚是物。

For Paek’pa, the kanhwa technique on the basis of the doctrinal studies is the path toward nirvāṇa. In this path, Kyo plays a role of effectuating kanhwa Sŏn practice though it is placed in the subordinate position to the Sŏn practice.

This positioning of Sŏn and Kyo in Paek’pa’s soteriology is probably related to his personal experience as well. As seen in chapter one, Paek’pa was versed at Buddhist doctrines to the extent that he became one of the renowned lecturers of his time. Nonetheless, he abandoned the doctrinal studies, cultivated kanhwa Sŏn practice, and eventually attained enlightenment. Through this experience, Paek’pa recognized the limitation as well as the necessity of Kyo from the soteriological viewpoint. As seen in the postface of his Susŏn kyōlsa

347 Ibid., HPC 10, 541a18.
348 Sŏnmun sugyŏng HPC 10, 524a05-07.
mun, he emphasized the importance of obtaining the correct eyes through the doctrinal studies and taught Buddhist doctrines even after his enlightenment experience.349

By founding Chinul’s soteriology of “sudden awakening/gradual cultivation” on Linji’s teaching, Paekp’a legitimized the Sŏn and Kyo relationship, which Chinul’s schema implies, through the authority of Imje.

3) Redefinition of the Linji school

Paekp’a’s integration of Chinul’s three mysteries and Linji’s three statements redefines not only Korean Sŏn but also Linji tradition. By interpreting Linji’s teaching as representing Chinul’s soteriology of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation,” Paekp’a identified the Linji school as a syncretic tradition that integrates Sŏn and Kyo in its soteriology.350

According to Paekp’a, the most important teaching of this Linji school is the teaching of “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials.” The teaching overshadows all the other teachings of the Linji school, including the teachings that were recognized as the hallmark of the school. For example, such non-linguistic instructions as shouting and beating become merely a part of Linji’s teaching as a feature of the first statement Sŏn; even the kanhwach technique, thus far regarded as “the practice” of the Linji school, is now placed in the second stage of Paekp’a’s three-fold soteriology. For Paekp’a, the teaching represents the Linji/Imje school which embraces both Sŏn and Kyo in its soteriological regimen.

349 Susŏn kyŏlsa mun HPC 10, 548a21-b01.
350 Pak Chae-hyŏn mentions Paekp’a’s definition of the Imje school as advocating the harmony of Sŏn and Kyo, based on his inclusion of principle Sŏn in the taxonomy. However, Pak provides little explanation for how Paekp’a soteriologically connected the two traditions. For Pak’s account, see Pak Chae-hyŏn 2005.
Paekp’a regarded the teaching as essential in understanding not only the Linji but also all Buddhist teachings. Quoting Pôphae Yujông and Hwansŏng Chian (1664-1729), Paekp’a argued as follows:

Sŏn Master Pôphae Yujông said, “What the Buddhas and the patriarchs received and put to use did not deviate from these three statements [i.e. Linji’s teaching of the three statements, the three mysteries, and the three essentials].” The old master Hwansŏng says, “Linji’s three statements are not only the style of the Linji school but also the matter of all the Buddhas above and the ordinary beings below. If one instructs what deviates from this teaching, it would be all delusional discourse.” Therefore, you should know that the words and phrases, left by not only all the Buddhas of past, present, and future and the patriarchs of all generations but also the good friends in the world, never deviate from these three statements.\(^\text{351}\)

For Paekp’a, this teaching of “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials” embodies the core of Buddhism. The teaching reveals the meaning of suchness as true emptiness and wondrous existence. It also unfolds the soteriological path of “sudden awakening/ gradual cultivation” in the form of taxonomy. Hence, this teaching is what all enlightened ones realized and all sentient beings have to realize to get enlightened. Paekp’a advised students first to clarify the meaning of Linji’s teaching and resolve all the doubts about the teaching by reading Ch’onch’aek’s Sŏnmun kangyo chip and Hwangsŏng’s Sŏnmun ojong kangyo, the excerpts from the Sŏnmun kangyo chip. The firm understanding of Linji’s teaching is the basis for studying Sŏn and Kyo because students could see the intents and meanings of all the teachings: they would not go awry in the journey of their training with the direction presented by the teaching. According to Paekp’a, students would eventually realize the principle that the Buddhas and

\(^{351}\) Sŏnmun sugyŏng HPC 10, 514c18-515a04.
patriarchs comfort their bodies and establish their lives, the principle that is already revealed in this teaching. For him, the teaching is the beginning and the end of all the Buddhist soteriologies.

The Korean Imje school whose main teaching is this “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials” is the supreme school of Chan/Śôn as well as all the Buddhist traditions.

4. Concluding Remarks

Paek’pa regarded the traditional Korean Sôn-Kyo syncretic soteriology as representing the orthodox path of Sôn Buddhism. He justified his view by unifying the Korean Sôn and Imje traditions from a soteriological viewpoint. Linji’s teaching of “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials” played the key role in his unification of the two traditions. Paek’pa presented the three-fold Sôn taxonomy on the basis of Ch’ônch’aek’s account of Linji’s teaching to achieve his goal. By using his taxonomy, Paek’pa not only promoted the Linji/Imje school, with which Chosôn Korean Sôn masters claimed to be affiliated, but also integrated the two traditions: he classified the six main Sôn lineages which had originated from the Sixth Patriarch Huineng, and upheld the Linji/Imje school as the highest level of Sôn, which fully and perfectly realized the immutable and conditional aspects of mind; he also interpreted his taxonomy as the three-fold soteriological path of principle, the tathāgata, and patriarch Sôns, and corresponded this path to Chinul’s three-mystery soteriology in the Chôryo. With this taxonomy, Paek’pa created the new Imje school of which the main teaching was the teaching of “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials.” This school advocated the soteriology of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation,” and became the supreme school whose teaching

352 Ibid., HPC 10, 515a04-20.
represented the core of all the Buddhist teachings. In this way, Paekp’a legitimized his view on
the Sŏn and Kyo relationship in which Kyo was subordinate to and yet necessary for Sŏn.

Paep’a’s definition of the Imje school could be regarded as the Korean attempt to
assimilate the Chinese Linji tradition on Korean soil. As mentioned before, the Korean Sŏn
genealogy of Paekp’a’s time was connected to the Linji lineage while its soteriology was still
built on the indigenous scheme. By unifying the teachings of the two traditions rather than just
transplanting the Chinese Linji teaching, Paekp’a completed the process of assimilation of Linji
Chan into the Korean Sŏn tradition.
Ch’o’üi advocated the ultimate identity of Sŏn and Kyo. His view on these two strands of Buddhism, which is revealed in his criticism of Paekp’a, serves to connect Buddhism and Confucianism in Confucian-dominant Chosŏn society.

As shown in chapter one, in late Chosŏn, many yangban literati showed a favorable attitude toward Buddhism. They made offerings for the construction of prayer halls or reconstructions of monasteries and often had a close relationship with Buddhist monks, communicating by letter or forming poetry gatherings. Some even pursued their interest in Buddhism by reading Buddhist scriptures and went even further to express their conviction in their insights of Buddhism from their reading by denouncing contemporary monks’ Sŏn-oriented practice and their understanding Buddhism. Among these literati were Chŏng Yagyong (1762-1836) and Kim Chŏng-hŭi (1786-1856), both of whom were critical of the kanhwa Sŏn technique. Ch’o’üi was intimate with many literati, including these two renowned literati. His extensive relationships with literati probably motivated him to proclaim the unity of Sŏn and Kyo, criticizing Paekp’a’s approach, which subordinated Kyo to Sŏn.

Ch’o’üi’s criticism of Paekp’a focused on the latter’s sectarian approach to Buddhism. As seen in the previous chapter, Paekp’a promoted the Linji lineage and Chinul’s soteriology in his three-fold taxonomy of Sŏn. Ch’o’üi criticized Paekp’a’s taxonomy, nullifying the rationale behind Paekp’a’s polemical claims. In his criticism, Ch’o’üi denied Paekp’a’s promotion of the Linji lineage by arguing that Linji’s three statements, Samch’ŏ chŏnsim, and the five Sŏn houses represented the same level of Sŏn. Ch’o’üi also presented little systematic soteriology, showing no preference for any specific Buddhist practice. He simply established the necessity and
efficacy of religious practice by drawing on his theory of mind. Ch’oũi then provided new definitions of Sŏn and Kyo, which endorsed Confucianism and Confucian literati approach to Buddhism at his time.

This chapter explores how Ch’oũi criticized Paek’ap’a’s hierarchical Sŏn taxonomy by providing different definitions of the main terms used in that taxonomy, and how Ch’oũi facilitated Buddhist and Confucian connections with his view on Sŏn and Kyo.

1. Ch’oũi’s Definitions of the Key terms used in Paek’ap’a’s Taxonomy

Ch’oũi presented different interpretations of the key terms of Paek’ap’a’s taxonomy in order to undermine Paek’ap’a’s interpretations. In doing so, Ch’oũi divided the terms into the following four major sets: (1) true emptiness (K. chin’gong 眞空) and wondrous existence (K. myoyu 妙有); (2) killing (K. sal 殺) and giving life (K. hwal 活); (3) tathāgata (K. yŏrae 如來) and patriarch (K. chosa 祖師); (4) principle (K. ŭiri 義理) and outside-the-format (K. kyŏg’oe 格外). The first set provides a theoretical basis for Ch’oũi’s mind theory; the second applies the first set to broader aspects of Buddhism; the third and the fourth constitute his two-fold Sŏn taxonomy.

1) true emptiness and wondrous existence

“True emptiness” and “wondrous existence” serve as the basic framework for the mind theories of both Paek’ap’a and Ch’oũi. However, Ch’oũi criticized Paek’ap’a of misunderstanding these two terms and gave them new definitions, which emphasize the difference between “truth” (K. chin 眞) and “delusion” (K. mang 忘).

Like Paek’ap’a, Ch’oũi applied “true emptiness” and “wondrous existence” to mind. For both masters, “true emptiness” refers to the immutable aspect of mind while “wondrous
existence”, to the conditional aspect. Unlike Paekp’a, however, Ch’oûï asserted that these two terms are related exclusively to the “true mind” (K. chinsim 真心), or, to borrow the term from the *Awakening of Faith*, the “mind-as-suchness” (K. sim chinyŏ 心眞如):

The *Awakening of Faith* says, “True suchness has two aspects if predicated in words. One is that it is really empty (What is real is empty; there is neither delusion nor outflows in it). This aspect can, in the final sense, reveal what is real (This refers to the untainted noble merits below). This emptiness that is not separate from existence is true emptiness. Hence, it is said that true emptiness is not empty. The other is that it is really nonempty. Its essence (which is the real emptiness above) is endowed with the non-outflow noble merits. This existence that is not separate from emptiness is wondrous existence. Thus, it is said that wondrous existence is not existence.”

In the mind theories of Paekp’a, Chinul, and Zongmi, “true emptiness” and “wondrous existence” or immutability and conditionality correspond to the “mind-as-suchness” and the “mind-as-birth-and-death” (K. sim saengmyŏl 心生滅), respectively. These Chan and Sŏn masters, associated closely with the Heze school in their thought, explained the inseparability of these minds, employing the traditional Chinese Buddhist polar sets, such as essence-function and nature-characteristic. However, Ch’oûï argued that true emptiness and wondrous existence are applicable only to the “mind-as-suchness.” According to him, these two aspects represent “real emptiness” (K. yŏsil kong 如實空) and “real non-emptiness” (K. yŏsil pulgong 如實不空), the two qualities of the “mind-as-suchness” from the Chinese apocryphal text: “real emptiness” is “true emptiness” since mind is empty without any defilements while “real non-emptiness” is

---

353 Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ŏ HPC 10, 830a07-13; for the translation of the portion from the *Awakening of Faith*, I consulted with Hakeda 2006: 41
“wondrous existence” since mind is full of untainted virtues and merits. Ch’o’ui justified these attributes of the two aspects to the true mind by quoting the text titled *Hwaŏm ki* 華嚴記:

The *Hwaŏm ki* says, “When the innate pure and clean nature of mind is not united with delusion, this is called ‘true emptiness’; when the nature is endowed with myriads of virtues, this is called ‘wondrous existence.’” However, this [text] speaks of ‘emptiness’ and ‘existence’ only in terms of the true mind. That is why it is called ‘true emptiness’ and ‘wondrous existence.’

The *Hwaŏm ki* probably refers to the Chinese Huayan master Chengguan’s commentary *Huayan jing suishu yanyi chao* 華嚴經隨疏演義鈔, which records the sentence Ch’o’ui quotes above though using the terms “emptiness” and “non-emptiness” instead of “true emptiness” and “wondrous existence.” Ch’o’ui here used this text to support his view that the two aspects belong only to the category of the true mind.

Such Ch’o’ui’s explanation of “true emptiness” and “wondrous existence” is in fact based on his rather strict distinction between the “true mind” (K. *chinsim* 眞心) and the “deluded mind” (K. *mangsim* 妄心):

The true mind regards the mind to be “numinous awareness” and “calm illumination.” It regards its essence to be “non-emptiness and non-abiding,” and its characteristic to be “true characteristic.”…The deluded mind regards the mind to be “images produced by the six sense fields.” It regards its essence to be “no-nature;” and its characteristic to be the “cognition that arises in accord with conditions.”

---

354 Ibid., HPC 10, 830a13-16.

355 It is not clear how popular the term *Hwaŏm ki* was as an alternative title for the *Huayan jing suishu yanyi chao*. Such Song Chan texts as the *Zongjing lu* 宗鏡錄 often quotes the phrases from the *Yanyi chao*, using the title “Hwaŏm ki,” instead of “Yanyi chao.” Korean Buddhist texts, however, hardly mention the term “Hwaŏm ki.”

356 Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ŏ HPC 10, 830a18-21.
According to Ch’oūi, the true mind and the deluded mind are different in essence and characteristic or essence and function: the former has untainted function within the pure non-abiding essence while the latter has tainted function in accord with conditions without such essence. He elsewhere added that “emptiness” (K. kong 空) and “existence” (K. yu 有) of the two minds are also different: emptiness and existence of the deluded mind are “nihilistic emptiness” (K. tan’gong 斷空) and “provisional existence” (K. kayu 假有) while those of the true mind are “true emptiness” and “wondrous existence.”\(^{357}\) Ch’oūi, then, pointed out that Paekp’a’s misunderstanding of “true emptiness” and “wondrous existence” comes from his ignorance of this difference between the two minds:\(^{358}\) in particular, Paekp’a was confused with the two kinds of existence that arise from the true and deluded minds. Ch’oūi criticizezd Paekp’a of wrongly affirming the existence of the deluded mind as “wondrous existence”, saying, “How could it be right that recently old Yug’ŭn [Paekp’a] stubbornly takes the ‘false names and characteristics which arise in accord with conditions’ as ‘wondrous existence’?”(近有六隱老人以隨緣所有虛僞名相 獨辦之為妙有烏乎可哉).\(^{359}\)

Ch’oūi, however, never made an explicit statement that would totally deny the ultimate identity between the true and deluded minds. This is probably because, if he had done so, he would have come to reject the de facto Chan/ Sŏn Buddhist tenet of non-dualism, established supposedly by the Sixth Patriarch Huineng in the *Platform Sūtra.* Instead, Ch’oūi even made a

---

\(^{357}\) Ibid., 830a16-17.

\(^{358}\) Ibid, 830b04.

\(^{359}\) Ibid., 820a03-05.
reference that seems to accept the ultimate identity of the two minds though such a case is rare.\textsuperscript{360} Since he did not provide any systematic explanation, it is just difficult to get the whole picture of his theory of mind. Nonetheless, Ch’oûi emphasized the difference between the two types of mind much more than their identity, though he did not reject that identity.

2) killing and giving life

“Killing” and “giving life” are the qualities that serve as a criterion for Paekp’a’s taxonomy. Ch’oûi’s explanation of the terms can be organized from the perspective of the following three aspects: mind, language, and wisdom.

In regard to the theory of mind, Ch’oûi connected “killing” and “giving life” to the traditional Chinese Buddhist sets on the two aspects of mind:

The term “killing” is established in terms of essence while the term “giving life” is established in terms of function. Hence, no delusion can arise within the really empty essence... The realm in which delusion doesn’t arise is originally endowed with the uncontaminated noble merits.\textsuperscript{361}

![Killing and giving life](image)

According to Ch’oûi, “killing” refers to the essence of mind which is empty and tranquil without defilements while “giving life” refers to the function of mind, manifested in the form of diverse virtues. Then, he corresponded “killing/ giving life” to other polar sets such as capacity/ function and illumination/ function.\textsuperscript{362} For Ch’oûi, these corresponding sets of “killing” and “giving life” could also involve “true emptiness” and “wondrous existence.”

\textsuperscript{360} Sang ilmi sŏnsaeng sŏ 上一味先生書, Ch’oûi sigo 艸衣詩藁 2, HPC 10, 868c23.

\textsuperscript{361} Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ô HPC 10, 828c18-22.

\textsuperscript{362} Ibid., 820c13
Ch’oûi introduced the linguistic perspective for “killing” and “giving life” when he explained the famous kong’an story involving Mañjuśrī and Sudhana. There, he correlated the two terms to the kataphatic truth revealed by apophatic rhetoric:

Mañjuśrī, who he was gathering medicinal herbs, said to Sudhana, “In the future, gather something that is not a medicinal herb.” This is like a patriarch saying, “[It is] neither mind nor Buddha nor a thing.” What is not a medicinal herb indeed refers to [what is] neither a thing, nor Buddha, nor mind. The empty essence, described by these four negations, can neither be named nor be characterized. Thus, it is forcefully expressed by what is not. When a wise person faces what is not, he knows what is …… When people can take the miraculous elixir of these four negations, then their mind, thought, cognition, aggregates, fields, and realms immediately disappear. When mind, thought, and cognition disappear, the pure dharma-body appears. This is why the medicine herb can kill people as well as gives life to people.

Ch’oûi suggested that apophatic rhetoric lead to the kataphatic truth. Since the truth of mind is beyond language, only apophatic rhetoric could express the truth, by describing what the truth is not. However, according to Ch’oûi, this ineffability of the truth does not lead to the infinite enumeration of such apophatic rhetoric. He argued that this rhetoric served to eliminate all the misunderstandings of self and nature, and eventually reveals the truth of the “pure dharma-

---

363 The story is recorded in such Song gong’an collections as the Wudeng huiyuan 五燈會元 and the Chanzong songgu lianzhutong ji 禪宗頌古聯珠通集. It is also recorded as the sixty fifth case in Hyesim’s Sŏnmun yŏmsong. The Sŏnmun yŏmsong version is as follows: One day Mañjuśrī ordered Sudhana to gather medicinal herbs, saying, “In the future, gather something that is not a medicinal herb.” Sudhana said, “There is nothing that is not medicinal herb in the mountains.” Mañjuśrī said, “In the future, gather something that is a medicinal herb.” Sudhana picked up a blade of grass on the ground and handed it to Mañjuśrī. Mañjuśrī held it up and showed it to the congregation, saying, “This medicinal herb can kill people as well as giving life to people.”

364 Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ŏ HPC 10, 829a09-22.
body.” For Ch’oûi, “killing” refers to apophatic rhetoric, which eradicates all mental falsity, while “giving life” is the kataphatic truth of mind, which arises from the pure state of that mind.

Ch’oûi then explained “killing” and “giving life” from the viewpoint of the function of wisdom. In particular, he compared this aspect of the terms to the famous metaphors of two types of sword: the “single-edged sword that kills people” (K. sar’in to 殺人刀) and the “double-edged sword that gives life to people” (K. hwar’in kŏm 活人劍).

[The “single-edged sword that kills people”] kills people, demons, Buddhas, and Patriarchs, as well as self and mind. (One must not seek the Buddhas and Patriarchs, getting attached to them. If he gets attached to them, the Buddhas and patriarchs rather become a hated thief. The same is the case if he gets attached to mind and body…) It is called the “single-edged sword that kills people” because it can kill people. 365

A person, a demon, a patriarch, and a Buddha are all originally in me…This means that [the “double-edged sword that gives life to people”] leaves as they are a person, a demon, a Buddha, and a patriarch. It is called the “double-edged sword that gives life to people” because it can give life to people. 366

According to Ch’oûi, the “single-edged sword” refers to the function of wisdom, which removes the attachment to the concepts such as Buddha, patriarch, self, and mind, all of which have become the obstacles to enlightenment; on the other hand, the “double-edged sword” refers to the functions of wisdom, which enables one not only to get unattached to these expedient concepts but also to use them freely without generating attachment.

365 Ibid., 829b11-15.
366 Ibid., 829b21-c01.
Ch’oûi suggested that “killing” and “giving life” serve as alternative concepts for “true emptiness” and “wondrous existence” that could be applied to the broader aspects of Buddhism.

3) Two types of Sôn: Tathāgata/ principle Sôn and patriarch/ outside-the-format Sôn

Ch’oûi advocated vocation the traditional approach to the four major Sôn categories of Paekp’a’s taxonomy: “principle Sôn,” “Tathāgata Sôn,” “patriarch Sôn,” and “outside-the-format Sôn.”

Ch’oûi introduced this approach as follows.

There are tathāgata Sôn and patriarch Sôn in terms of person; there are principle Sôn and outside-the-format Sôn in terms of dharma. This is the popular view transmitted from the ancient monasteries.\(^{367}\)

Like Paekp’a, Ch’oûi did not explain what he meant by “person” (K. in 人) and “Dharma” (K. pŏb 法) as a criterion for Sôn categorization. Probably, a “person” here simply indicates such personal appellations as “Tathāgata” and “patriarch:” thus, the Sôn that the Tathāgata practices is tathāgata Sôn while the Sôn that patriarchs practice is patriarch Sôn. On the other hand, “dharma” refers to the means of dharma-transmission: when the dharma is transmitted while relying on linguistic principle, that Sôn is principle Sôn; when it is transmitted outside-the-format, that Sôn is outside-the-format Sôn.

Ch’oûi, then, explained the traditional correspondence of these four Sôn categories by providing the definitions for the categories. He first clarified the meanings of the terms “outside-the-format” and “principle:” According to Ch’oûi, the term “outside-the-format” means transcending the format of linguistic principle: in particular, it refers to the special way of

\(^{367}\) Ibid., 827c22-828a01.
transmitting the mind-dharma, which occurs outside the scriptures without relying on the linguistic means.  
On the other hand, the term “principle” refers to an essential principle of a certain phenomenon or teaching. Ch’oûi gave some examples of the principles: the principle of Huayan is the “perfect interpenetration without obstruction” (K. wŏnyung muae 圓融無礙); that of the Buddha, “permanence, bliss, self, and purity” (K. sangnak ajŏng 常樂我淨); and that of the Heaven’s Way, “primality, prosperity, benevolence, and chastity” (K. wŏnhyŏng lijŏng 元亨利貞). 
According to him, even principle Sŏn and outside-the-format Sŏn also have their own principles: The principle of principle Sŏn is the revelation of mind through the language of the Buddha and patriarchs while that of outside-the-format Sŏn is the transmission of mind without relying on language.

After defining the two terms, Ch’oûi argued that the Sŏn categories of outside-the-format Sŏn and principle Sŏn developed to specifically refer to the other two categories.

In general, the transmission from mind to mind without relying on the oral teaching is called “patriarch Sŏn.” Since this transmission and reception is far outside the format of Kyo, it can be also called “outside-the-format Sŏn.” In general, the realization of the principle by explaining the meaning with language is called “tathāgata Sŏn.” Since this awakens people with the principle of the oral teaching, it can also be called “principle Sŏn.” This is the origin of the names, “outside-the-format Sŏn” and “principle Sŏn.”

凡不由言敎 以心傳心 謂之祖師禪 此之傳受迥出敎格之外 亦可名格外禪
凡開言而說義 因言而證理 謂之如來禪 是由言敎義理而悟人 亦可名義理禪
此格外禪義理禪之所以立名之始也。

368 Ibid., 828b02-04.
369 Ibid., 828a16-20.
370 Ibid., 828a20-24.
371 Ibid., 827c16-21.
According to Ch’o’uĩ, outside-the-format Sŏn is just a different name for patriarch Sŏn, just as principle Sŏn is for tathāgata Sŏn. Ch’o’uĩ, thus, followed the traditional two-fold taxonomy of Sŏn: (1) tathāgata/ principle Sŏn; (2) patriarch/ outside-the-format Sŏn.

As seen above quotation, however, Ch’o’uĩ applied a little different criterion for this Sŏn taxonomy from the traditional approach. Instead of the two criteria of person and dharma, he used only the latter. If linguistic means is employed in Sŏn transmission, this becomes “tathāgata/ principle Sŏn”; if not, it becomes “patriarch/ outside-the-format Sŏn.” He did not regard the Sŏn of the Tathāgata as “tathāgata/principle Sŏn” and the Sŏn of the patriarchs as “patriarch/outside-the-format Sŏn.” For Ch’o’uĩ, Tathāgatas and patriarchs in fact practice both types of Sŏn: what they transmit by linguistic means becomes “tathāgata/principle Sŏn” whether that language is conceptual or non-conceptual; what they transmit by non-linguistic means such as silence, beating, or shouting becomes “patriarch/outside-the-format Sŏn.”

2. Ch’o’uĩ’s Criticism of Paek’pa’a’s Theory

With his redefinitions of the main terms in Paek’pa’a’s theory, Ch’o’uĩ criticized Paek’pa’a’s three-fold Sŏn taxonomy. His criticism focuses on the following three aspects: Paek’pa’a’s (1) connection of Linji’s three statements to the three types of Sŏn; (2) correspondence of Samch’o chŏnsim to “killing” and “giving life;” and (3) classification of Five Sŏn Houses.

1) Correspondence of Linji’s three statements to the three types of Sŏn

Ch’o’uĩ criticized Paek’pa’a’s correspondence of Linji’s “three statements” to the three types of Sŏn, introducing a new correspondence of the “three statements” to the two types of Sŏn.

372 Ibid., 828b02-13.
According to Ch’oŭi, Paekp’a’s correspondence is simply wrong because he completely misunderstood the four Sŏn categories. As seen in chapter four, Paekp’a presented the three-fold Sŏn taxonomy, based on Ch’ŏnch’aek’s hierarchical interpretation of Linji’s teaching of “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials.” Paekp’a regarded the first statement of Linji’s “three statements” as the perfect and full enlightenment of the two aspects of mind, and correlated it to “patriarch Sŏn,” the highest level of Sŏn characterized with both “killing” and “giving life.” Then, he referred to the second statement as the partial enlightenment or delusion, which only realizes the immutable aspect of mind, and connected this statement to “tathāgata Sŏn, the mid-level Sŏn characterized with “killing.” Paekp’a asserted that these two types belong to the category of “outside-the-format Sŏn.” Finally, he regarded the third statement as the state of complete delusion, featured with the attachment to the principle of language, and corresponded it to “principle Sŏn,” the lowest Sŏn without both “killing” and “giving life.”

Ch’oŭi criticized such Paekp’a’s correspondences as follows:

It would be most unacceptable to only select tathāgata Sŏn of the second statement and name it “outside-the-format Sŏn,” or to take “new [infusion] without the original [share]” as the third statement and to separately name it “principle Sŏn.”

若第二句如來禪 獨拔之 爲格外禪 又以新無本 爲第三句 以此別立義理禪之名 則最大不可.

Ch’oŭi’s criticism of Paekp’a’s connection focuses on two points: (1) the relationship between tathāgata Sŏn and outside-the-format Sŏn; (2) the characteristics of tathāgata Sŏn and principle Sŏn. For the first point, Ch’oŭi criticized Paekp’a of wrongly placing tathāgata Sŏn on the level of outside-the-format Sŏn. Ch’oŭi argued that Paekp’a in fact described tathāgata Sŏn as principle Sŏn, pointing out Paekp’a’s statement, “tathāgata Sŏn leads sentient beings of mid-

373 Ibid., 823c13-15.
level mental capacity to penetrate their original share with the expedient means of three mysteries” (如來禪 以中根衆生 即於三玄權門透得本分).\(^{374}\) According to Ch’oũi, what Paekp’a’s statement means is that every single word of tathāgata Sŏn fits perfectly into the linguistic framework. For Ch’oũi, this statement proves that Paekp’a himself acknowledged the fact that tathāgata Sŏn is principle Sŏn. Ch’oũi, therefore, criticized Paekp’a’s taxonomy of being contradictory even to his own correct statement.\(^{375}\) For the second point, Ch’oũi criticized Paekp’a’s argument that the third statement only has “new infusion without the original share,” and that this third statement is “principle Sŏn.”\(^{376}\) It is not clear what Paekp’a and Ch’oũi meant by “new infusion without the original share.” However, it probably refers to the type of Sŏn which never realizes any of the mind’s two aspects. Ch’oũi simply argued that Paekp’a’s argument was wrong because both the third statement and principle Sŏn had “new infusion” as well as the “original share” and thus realize the truth of mind fully and perfectly.\(^{377}\)

After criticizing Paekp’a’s correspondence, Ch’oũi presented a new set of correspondences between Linji’s “three statements” and the two types of Sŏn. In doing so, Ch’oũi looked to Ch’ŏnch’aek’s interpretation of the “three statements” in terms of the “dead word” and the “live word.”

As for the first statement, it is the live word in which a host and a guest is not divided; verbal expression has not yet appeared; the true source that shines alone is the live word…The second statement [is as follows:] verbal expression temporarily arises and the true source gets covered in the realm where analysis cannot yet be applied and discussed. This is the neither-dead-nor-live word…The third statement is the statement that speaks of capacity and function of the three essentials as well as explains

\(^{374}\) Ibid., 821c08-10; for Paekp’a’s statement, see Sŏnmun sugyŏng HPC 10, 519c09-10.

\(^{375}\) Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ŏ HPC 10, 821c11-12.

\(^{376}\) Ibid., 821c12-14.

\(^{377}\) Ibid., 823b09-22.
expediences and reality of the three mysteries.  This is the dead word that greatly deforms the wondrous root with the use of names and numbers.378

Like Ch’ŏnch’aek, Ch’oŭi connected the first and third statements to these famous Chan/ Sŏn metaphors.  For Ch’oŭi, the first statement is the “live word” that reveals the truth beyond language; the third statement is the “dead word” that distorts the truth of the “wondrous root.” While Ch’ŏnch’aek simply omitted the second statement in his correspondence, Ch’oŭi described the statement as the word of “neither-dead-nor-live” (K. pulsa purhwal 不死不活) or “half-dead-half-live” (K. pansa panhwal 半死半活).379 However, for this connection of the “three statements” to the dead and live words, Ch’oŭi did not provide much of a rationale. Instead, he assigned specific rhetorical styles to his correspondence. According to him, the first statement of the “live word” specifically refers to such non-linguistic expressions as silence, shouting, beating, and the Buddha’s acts of the three mind-transmissions; the second statement of “neither-dead-nor-live” or “half-dead-and-half-live,” to the less conceptual expressions that are often found in Chan and Sŏn texts;380 and finally, the third statement of the “dead word,” to the conceptual linguistic expressions that explain the first and second statements.381

378 Ibid., 821c20-822a04.

379 Ch’oŭi sŏngwa 師衣禪課, Yong’un 1985: 352.2

380 Ibid., 363.3-363.8

381 Ch’oŭi argued that what the Tathāgata preached for forty-nine years and what the patriarchs and renowned masters preached all belong to the category of the third statement. For him, the third statement is the expressions which explain the first and second statements conceptually and intellectually. Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ŏ HPC 10, 823b11-17
With his correspondence of the “three statements” to these different rhetorical styles of the dead and live words, Ch’o’ui provided the two-fold taxonomy of Sŏn. In the Ch’o’ui sŏn’gwa 草衣禪果, the commentarial text to Hyesim’s Sŏnmun yŏmsong 禪門拈頌, he linked the first two statements to “tathāgata/principle Sŏn” and “patriarch/outside-the-format Sŏn,” respectively.

Relying on outside-the-format [such as] “Holding up a flower to show” and not being associated with the linguistic teaching is patriarchal Sŏn. [This is] what Linji referred to as the first statement and what Nanquan referred to the live word. Manifesting the true sign by establishing the expedient means of questions and answers is tathāgata Sŏn. [This is] what Linji referred to as the second statement and what Chin’gak referred to as the half-dead-half-live word. 382

Ch’o’ui connected the first statement of the live word to “patriarch/outside-the-format Sŏn,” and the second statement of the half-live-half-dead word to “tathāgata/principle Sŏn.” Although he never explicitly linked the third statement of the dead word to any of the two types of Sŏn, Ch’o’ui seems to put the statement into the category of “tathāgata-principle Sŏn” in the Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ŏ.

In general, [if a statement] is not to explain, then that’s fine. If it is to explain, then it indeed belongs to the third statement. 383

If you designate “what explains the principle of mysteries and essentials” as “principle Sŏn,” you are close to ancient [masters.] (Ancient masters regarded “tathāgata Sŏn of the second statement” as “principle Sŏn.”) Thus, [what you said] is not necessarily unacceptable. 384

382 Ch’o’ui sŏn’gwa, Yong’un 1985: 351.12-352.2

383 Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ŏ HPC 10, 823c02-03.

384 Ibid., 823c11-13.
若以演暢玄要之義理 謂之義理禪 則近古（古人以第二句如來禪 爲義理禪）而未必不可矣。

Ch’oûi here suggested that the third statement can be principle Sŏn because “explaining the principle of mysteries and essentials” is the feature of principle Sŏn and because the act of “explaining” itself is the feature of the third statement. For him, although it is usually the second statement that is related to “tathāgata/principle Sŏn,” the third statement can also be regarded as such. All of Ch’oûi’s correspondences can be charted as follows.

Table 8. Ch’oûi’s correspondences of Linji’ teaching

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st statement</th>
<th>Live word</th>
<th>Non-linguistic expression</th>
<th>patriarch/ outside-the-format Sŏn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2nd statement</td>
<td>Neither-live-nor-dead word</td>
<td>Non-conceptual</td>
<td>tathāgata/ principle Sŏn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd statement</td>
<td>Dead word</td>
<td>Conceptual</td>
<td>tathāgata/ principle Sŏn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Despite all his correspondences, Ch’oûi was critical of offering hierarchy to his two-fold Sŏn taxonomy. He argued that not only the thirty three Indian and Chinese patriarchs, but also the Chan masters of the Five Sŏn Houses never had spoken of the hierarchy between the two types of Sŏn.\(^{385}\) According to Ch’oûi, “tathāgata/principle Sŏn” and “patriarch/ outside-the-format Sŏn” represent the same level of Sŏn: they transmit the same mind-dharma while they have a difference of “revelation and secrecy” (K. hyŏnmil 顯密) in their way of transmitting that dharma.\(^{386}\)

\(^{385}\) Ibid., 826c16-17.

\(^{386}\) Ibid., 827a14-16.
2) Correspondence of *Samch’ŏ chŏnsim* to “killing” and “giving life”

Ch’o’ui criticized Paekp’a’s hierarchical interpretation of the term *Samch’ŏ chŏnsim*, which Paekp’a employed to justify his three-fold Sŏn taxonomy. Paekp’a argued that the Buddha had transmitted the different levels of the mind in the first and second mind-transmissions and that these had become the origin of the hierarchy between tathāgata Sŏn and patriarchal Sŏn. According to Paekp’a, the first transmission “sharing the seat” is tathāgata Sŏn because it has only “killing” without “giving life” while the second transmission “holding up a flower” is patriarch Sŏn because it has both “killing” and “giving life.”

Ch’o’ui criticized Paekp’a’s argument for being groundless:

> “Of the three places of mind-transmission, ‘Sharing the seat’ transmitted ‘killing;’ ‘Holding up a flower’ transmitted ‘giving life to people;’ ‘Showing the feet’ presents both ‘killing’ and ‘giving life.’” This is the old master Kugok’s words. Now, [Paekp’a’s statements that ‘Sharing the seat’ has only ‘killing’ and that ‘Holding up a flower’ has both ‘killing’ and ‘giving life’ cannot be found in Kugok’s words.]

Ch’o’ui mentioned the monk named “Kugok” probably because he was confused between Kugok Kagun 龜谷覺雲 and his early contemporary monk Kagun who is the author of the *Sŏnmun yŏmsong sŏrhwa* 禪門拈頌說話, the text in which the term *Samch’ŏ chŏnsim* first appears.

This confusion occurs since Kugok Kagun was wrongly named as the author of the text in the preface of the early Chosŏn edition of that text. Probably, here what Ch’o’ui meant by “Kagun’s words” is the Koryo monk Kagun’s words from the *Sŏnmun yŏmsong sŏrhwa*.

---

387 Ibid., 820c07-09.
388 Ibid., 820c10-12.
389 Chunggan yŏmsong sŏrhwa sŏ 重刊拈頌說話序, *Sŏnmun yŏmsong sŏrhwa* HPC 5,2b07
Ch’hui was right in that the *Sŏnmun yŏmsong sŏrhwa* does not say that each mind-transmission transmitted only a certain aspect of the mind. On the other hand, he was wrong in that the text does not say that “killing” and “giving life” were transmitted in the third transmission that involved “showing the feet.”

As Ch’hui’s mistake or rather negligence may indicate, his criticism of Paek’a’s interpretation of three mind-transmissions does not lie in Paek’a’s wrongful usage of the source material. According to Ch’hui, Paek’a is wrong in his interpretation because he misunderstood “killing” and “giving life,” in particular, the relationship between these two terms. Ch’hui asserted that not only “killing/giving life” but also other alternative polar sets such as “essence/function” are interdependent and inseparable. He explained this relationship between the two aspects of mind with the analogy of the limbs and the whole body: the limbs are only meaningful within relation to the whole body while the whole body is also meaningful within relation to the limbs. Likewise, for Ch’hui, “killing” cannot be itself without “giving life” while “giving life” cannot be itself without “killing.”

Based on this understanding of the relationship between “killing” and “giving life,” Ch’hui criticized Paek’a’s argument that “Sharing the seat” has only “killing” while “Holding up a flower” has both “killing” and “giving life.” According to Ch’hui, since “killing” and “giving life” are interdependent and inseparable, they always exist together. For him, even though the *Sŏnmun yŏmsong sŏrhwa* only says that there is “killing” without mentioning “giving life” or that there is “giving life” without mentioning “killing,” what the text really means is that there are both “killing” and “giving life.” Hence, the first transmission that Paek’a described...

---

390 *Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ŏ*, HPC 10, 820c13-14.

391 Ibid., 821a06-08.
as possessing only “killing,” in fact, has both aspects of the true mind just as the second transmission does.

By the same token, Ch’oūi also asserted that the “single-edged sword that kills people” and the “double-edged sword that gives life to people” always function together.

If [a sword] comes to be able to kill people, it must be able to give life to people. If [a sword] comes to be able to give life to people, it must be able to kill people. If [a sword] is only able to kill or give life, it is not being well used. 392

既殺得人 須活得人 既殺得人 須活得人 若只單殺單活 則非好手也.

According to Ch’oūi, if wisdom has the function of the “single-edged sword” or the “double-edged sword,” then it in fact has both functions: it removes all the defilements and at the same time responds in accord with conditions. For him, all of the three mind-transmissions of “sharing the seat,” “holding up a flower,” and “showing the feet” are the same level of transmission in that they all transmit both aspects of the true mind fully and perfectly.

3) Classification of the five Sŏn houses

Ch’oūi criticized Paekp’a’s classification of the five Sŏn houses. Paekp’a classified five houses into tathāgata Sŏn and patriarch Sŏn in terms of realizing the truth of mind. Paekp’a placed the Linji and Yunmen schools on the highest level of patriarch Sŏn, which realizes both immutable and conditional aspects of mind; the Weiyang, Fayan, and Caodong schools on the second level of tathāgata Sŏn, which only realizes the immutable aspect. Ch’oūi criticized Paekp’a’s classification as follows.

From whom does he learn all the words like this? Who transmitted them? Or, does this derive from the mind-seal of self-realization? What kind of words does that belong to? Now, in assigning the Five Houses to the two Sŏns, what excellent principles are

392 Ibid., 821a12-14.
there [for him] to poke and pry? For the terms, “killing,” “giving life,” “capacity,” and “function,” there is no joint [he] does not sever and paste. For the identity and non-identity of “illumination” and “function,” there is no hole [he] does not cover.  

如此諸說從何人學得來 誰之所傳 抑復自證之心印上所流出耶 蓋是當何之言也 大抵以二禪 配五宗 有何勝善好道理 如此委曲穿鑿耶…殺活機用字 無節而不貼 以照用同不同無竅而不納.

Ch’o’üi argued that Paek’a classified the five houses because he approached Sŏn intellectually and conceptually. Ch’o’üi went further to say that only a “group of monks who are lame and one-eyed” (跛腳眇目之阿師輩) take such a Sŏn approach.

Then, Ch’o’üi disproved Paek’a’s classification of the five houses by taking the examples of the Weiyang and Fayan schools. For the Weiyang school, he used the episode between Weishan and Xiangyan from which the hierarchy between tathāgata Sŏn and patriarch Sŏn originates. After quoting this episode, which I explained in chapter four, Ch’o’üi commented: “If there is finally no patriarch Sŏn in the Weiyang school, how could these two masters command [those two terms] like this?” (潙仰宗中 果無祖師禪 此二尊宿 何以如此弄現耶). For the Fayan school, he used an example of the founder Fayan Wenyi (法眼文益 885-958) speaking of an expression related to patriarch Sŏn:

Fayan said, “If you see all characteristics are not characteristics, then you do not see Tathāgata. This is patriarch Sŏn.” From this, Fayan already spoke of “patriarch Sŏn” as well.

---

393 Ibid., 825b09-20.
394 Ibid., 824a22-23.
395 Ibid., 825a22-b03.
396 Ibid., 825b03-05.
397 Ibid., 825b05-07.
According to Ch’oůi, the fact that the ancestors of both schools used the term “patriarch Sŏn” is the evidence that the schools reach the level of patriarch Sŏn. Although the Caodong school is not mentioned in his criticism, the three schools of Weiyang, Fayan, and Caodong, which are considered in Paekp’a’s taxonomy as only realizing true emptiness or killing, in fact realize both true emptiness and wondrous existence or killing and giving life.

4) The meaning of Ch’oůi’s criticism of Paekp’a

Ch’oůi’s criticism of Paekp’a’s taxonomy reveals Ch’oůi’s view on Sŏn. Ch’oůi, most of all, advocated the unity of Sŏn. When he criticized Paekp’a’s hierarchical interpretation of the three Sŏn types, Ch’oůi asserted that there is no hierarchy in the two types of Sŏn. According to Ch’oůi, the two types of Sŏn transmit the same mind though they are just different in their way of transmitting that mind. He also argued for the unity of Sŏn in his view of the term “Samch’ŏ chŏnsim.” Focusing on the inseparability of “killing” and “giving life,” Ch’oůi asserted that these two aspects of mind had been transmitted in all three mind-transmissions, and thus that “Samch’ŏ chŏnsim” represented one single type of Sŏn. Since the Buddha did not rely on the linguistic means to transmit his mind in the three places, all three mind-transmissions can be categorized as “patriarch/outside-the-format Sŏn,” which, according to Ch’oůi’s definition of Sŏn, is the same level with “tathāgata/principle Sŏn.” Ch’oůi also denied any hierarchy among the five houses. He argued that the five Sŏn houses practice the same level of Sŏn in that they all have “tathāgata/principle Sŏn” as well as “patriarch/outside-the-format Sŏn.”

Such Ch’oůi’s view on the unity of Sŏn directly refutes Paekp’a’s polemical approach to Sŏn. Paekp’a presented the three-fold Sŏn taxonomy to promote the Linji school, with which
he identified the Korean Sŏn Buddhist tradition from both genological and soteriological perspectives. However, Ch’o’ui did not accept any polemical claim by denying all the theoretical grounds of Paekp’a’s taxonomy. Ch’o’ui refuted the hierarchical categorization of the “three statements,” “Samch’ŏ chŏnsim,” and “Five Houses,” which Paekp’a applied to justify his polemical endeavor. In particular, Linji’s “three statements” loses its pivotal role that it plays in Paekp’a’s system, and even does not fit well in Ch’o’ui’s non-polemical approach. For Ch’o’ui, there is no hierarchy in Sŏn.

Ch’o’ui’s mind theory, which focuses on the true mind, underlies his view on the unity of Sŏn. According to him, the diverse functions of the viturious nature are always manifested within the empty and tranquil essence of the true mind.

One thousand Buddhas are what one mind transforms and reveals… When [the mind] transforms into existence, Gold Statues as numerous as stars are shining. If [they] withdraw and return to immutability, the empty essence of one principle is completely interpenetrated. Transformation means to desire to exist as phenomena while withdrawal means to desire to be manifested as principle...Śākyamuni repeatedly revealed by showing his feet and Bodhidharma returned alone, wearing one shoe. There is nothing that does not manifest existence by facing extinction. Mañjuśrī harassed the Buddha with a sword and Danxia burned a statue with strong fire. There is nothing that does not manifest the truth by removing traces.398

千佛者 一心之變現也...以變而為有則列星之金像燦然 收歸不變 則一理之空體圓 融變之欲其存事 收之欲其顯理...夫釋迦雙趺以重顯 達摩隻履而獨歸 無非所以即滅而顯存也 文殊按劒而逼佛 丹霞烈火而焚像 無非所以奪跡而顯眞也.

Here, Ch’o’ui added another traditional Chinese pair of “principle (C. li, K. i 理)/ phenomena” (C. shi, K. sa 事) to the polar sets of capacity/ function, essence/ function, killing/ giving to life, and true emptiness/ wondrous existence. According to him, all these polarities belong to the realm of the true mind or enlightenment: all diverse acts of the Buddhas and patriarchs are the

398 Chung chosŏng ch’ŏnbul ki 重造成千佛記, Ch’o’ui sigo 艸衣詩藁 2, HPC 10, 863a16-b07.
manifestations of one and the same enlightened mind, whether they are categorized as 
tathāgata/principle Sŏn or patriarch/ outside-the-format Sŏn, whether they happen in three or 
more different places, or whether they belong to the style of the Linji, Yunmen, Weiyang, Fayan, 
or Caodong schools.

3. Ch’ouii’s Soteriology

While Paekp’a promoted the traditional Korean soteriological shema of “sudden 
awakening followed by gradual cultivation,” Ch’ouii did not advocate any Buddhist practice, 
including the traditional schema. In fact, Ch’ouii presented little systematic soteriological 
schema in his works. He just assured the necessity and efficacy of religious practice with his 
mind theory, which emphasizes the difference between the true and deluded minds.

There are not many clues on Ch’ouii’s soteriology or his personal Buddhist training. 
There are just a few records. A memorial inscription, composed by the literatus Yi Hui-p’ung 
李喜豊 (1813-1886), says that Ch’ouii was deeply interested in Huayan repentance practice.399

However, it is not likely that Ch’ouii really cultivated the practice or he counted it as his 
soteriology because the practice is never mentioned in any of Ch’ouii’s works. Another 
inscription by a renowned literocrat Sin Hŏn 申樁 (1810-1888) mentions that Ch’ouii cultivated 
the practice of “cessation and contemplation” (K. chigwan 止觀) for forty years.400

Although Ch’ouii did not give much explanation to this practice, he made the following short reference:

Delusion and disruption make things unable to return [to the original state]. 
Illuminating the delusion is called brightness. Stopping disruption is called calmness.

399 Ilchiam munjip 一枝庵文集, HPC 12, 272a22-24

400 Ch’ouii taechongsa t’appimyŏng 師衣大宗師塔碑銘, Ch’ouii sigo 2 HPC 10, 869c12-13
Brightness and calmness are the essence of cessation and contemplation. [These] make all sentient beings follow the path of enlightenment and reach the wondrous realm.\(^{401}\)

物之所以不能復者 昏與動使之然也 照昏者 謂之明 住動者 謂之靜 明與靜止觀之體也 使羣生行覺路而之妙境也.

Here, Ch’oûi seems to regard “cessation and contemplation” as the practice of samādhi and prajñā, which he elsewhere referred to as the essence of Sŏn.\(^{402}\) In the above quotation, the practice of cessation and contemplation is introduced as a practice that would lead to enlightenment. However, it is not clear what this practice really indicates because Ch’oûi provided no further explanation for the practice.

Without presenting any solid hints on his practical scheme, Ch’oûi just made the following remark, which gives a glimpse into his view on religious practice.

People who listen to dharma generate the intention to cultivate, realize, and adorn something. [The truth is] not a thing that can be adorned. Neither is it a thing that can be cultivated and realized…If one seeks for it, it instead becomes distant; if one does not seek for it, it is instead in front of the eyes. Supposed that someone who has toiled for a hundred years without awakening now here believes, enjoys, and gets awakened. Then, with his awakening, he should be able to become a host in accord with daily condition. If so, wherever he stands becomes true without any effort.\(^{403}\)

Ch’oûi’s statement, which at first glance seems to deny any necessity and efficacy of religious practice, can be understood from the perspective of the relationship between the true and deluded minds. As Zongmi and Chinul showed well, this relationship between the two minds raises a


\(^{402}\) *Ilchiam munjip* HPC 12, 263c11.

\(^{403}\) Sang ilmi sŏnsaeng sŏ, *Ch’oûi sigo* 2, HPC10, 869a09-17.
serious question about practice. On the one hand, when the true mind is too different or transcendent from the deluded mind, the former could not be attained by any kind of the acts of the latter. On the other hand, when they are too close to or identical with each other, there is no need for any medium to connect them. Thus, the larger the gap between the true and deluded minds, the less effective Buddhist practice becomes; on the contrary, the smaller the gap, the less necessary Buddhist practice.\textsuperscript{404} The traditional Chan/ Sŏn response to this quandary, which Paekp’a followed, is to define the two minds as the two different epistemological functions originating from the same entity. By doing so, it could provide the theoretical basis for religious practice, which then aims to discover the pure innate nature of mind covered by adventitious defilements rather than attaining something inherently different from the current state.

Although Ch’oūi had a somewhat different view on the two minds, he gained the same effect on the issue of religious practice from his theory of mind. As seen before, Ch’oūi did not totally deny the ultimate identity of the true and deluded minds, while emphasizing the difference rather than the identity. By doing so, he accepted the idea that the deluded mind should and could be transformed into the true mind: without the explicit denial of the identity of the two minds, he secured the efficacy of religious practice; and at the same time with the strong emphasis on their difference, he defended the necessity of the practice. Thus what Ch’oūi really intended in the above quotation is to show the characteristic of religious practice rather than rejecting the efficacy or the necessity of the practice. For him, religious practice is an action of nonattachment, even to the very religious goal as well as to the path toward that goal, in which a practitioner does not generate even the hope of attaining the true mind or thought of what

\textsuperscript{404} For more details of this issue of the relationship between the Buddhist practice and its goal, see Buswell and Gimello 1992: 21-29.
practice to cultivate or how to cultivate the practice. This view of religious practice seems similar with the traditional Chan/ Sŏn description of the so-called “no-thought practice.” However, since Ch’oŭi did not give any further comment, we cannot be sure how he really thought of religious practice.

Ch’oŭi showed little interest in questions such as how the true mind is attained and what practice is more efficient to accomplish that goal. He simply established the necessity of religious practice by emphasizing the difference between the two minds while he did not go further to denying the identity of the two minds, thus not nullifying the efficacy of the practice. His emphasis on the difference between the two minds also affects his view on Sŏn and Kyo.

4. Sŏn and Kyo

Ch’oŭi gave a new definition to Sŏn and Kyo in terms of the true and deluded minds. His new definition not only removes the conventional distinction between these two strands of Buddhism, but also facilitates the connection between Confucianism and Buddhism.

As a matter of fact, Ch’oŭi accepted the conventional view that there is a difference between Sŏn and Kyo. He even tried to provide some crieteria to distinguish them. He first took the usage of language as a criterion, which he also used for his two-fold categorization of Sŏn as seen before:

Now, what names and words could describe the Blue-Lotus Eyes (Buddha) blinking his eyes and the Purple-Gold Face (Kāśyapa) smiling subtly? If there are special names [for them], they are the traces of Kyo. Then, how would people today hear the meaning of what is called “separate transmission outside the teaching”? ⁴⁰⁵

夫靑蓮目之高瞬 紫金顏之微哂 有何名言可容於舌頭哉 如有名數言說 便是敎跡也 其所謂教外別傳之旨 豈有聞於今日哉.

⁴⁰⁵ Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ŏ HPC 10, 826c11-14.
According to Ch’o’üi, Sŏn refers to the separate transmission through non-linguistic means such as “bliking the eyes” and “smiling” as shown in the original event of Sŏn transmission between the Buddha Śākyamuni and Mahākāśyapa, while Kyo refers to the transmission through linguistic means of “names” and “words.” However, since it is just as obvious that Sŏn also employs language in its transmission, Ch’o’üi gave another criterion: the difference in rhetorical styles. He quoted Chinul as follows:

Mog’uja said, “The words and phrases of the Sŏn gate just value manifesting the truth by destroying attachment. They intend to enter awakening through a direct shortcut. They do not allow knowledge through giving descriptive explanation and establishing principle.”

For Ch’o’üi, Sŏn uses terse and non-conceptual rhetoric to bring about direct transmission of the ultimate truth while Kyo uses prose and conceptual rhetoric to explain that truth. However, for him, Sŏn can be defined as employing all types of rhetorical styles since “tathāgata/Principle Sŏn” is also connected to the conceptual third statement in his correspondence of Linji’s three statements to the two types of Sŏn. Ch’o’üi’s correlation of these rhetorical styles to Sŏn and Kyo can be charted as follows.

Table 9. Rhetorical styles of Sŏn and Kyo in Ch’o’üi’s thought

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st statement</th>
<th>2nd statement</th>
<th>3rd statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-linguistic expression</td>
<td>Non-conceptual</td>
<td>Conceptual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sŏn</td>
<td>Sŏn</td>
<td>Sŏn/Kyo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Ibid., 826c06-08; Chinul did not make this statement. In fact, Ch’o’üi paraphrased some sentences from Chinul’s Kanhwa kyŏrūi ron; for example, see Kanhwa kyŏrūi ron HPC 4, 733c22-23 and 736c12-13.
Most importantly, however, for Ch’o’i, the rhetorical differences between Sŏn and Kyo does not necessarily lead to hierarchical relationship between the two. As seen in chapter four, what decided the hierarchy between Sŏn and Kyo for Paekp’a was the issue of the soteriological efficacy. In Paekp’a’s schema of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation,” Kyo is always subordinate to Sŏn though they are inter-complementary. Kyo only plays a preparatory role for Sŏn practice, which leads to enlightenment. In particular, according to Paekp’a, kanhwa Sŏn is the only Sŏn practice, which would bring about that ultimate goal regardless of a practitioner’s mental capability. However, in Ch’o’i’s system, there is no emphasis on the soteriological efficacy of either kanhwa Sŏn or Sŏn in general. In fact, there is simply not a sufficient reference anywhere in Ch’o’i’s oeuvre to see what he thought of kanhwa Sŏn practice. Although he made a few references to the practice, they are just passing references without mentioning its soteriological efficacy.

The renowned yangban Kim Chŏng-hŭi may give some hint of Ch’o’i’s view on kanhwa Sŏn practice. Kim was very close to Ch’o’i. He discussed Buddhism and even denounced Paekp’a’s promotion of kanhwa Sŏn practice in many letters he sent to Ch’o’i. Kim also sent a few letters directly to Paekp’a on the subject of that practice. In one of those letters, Kim harshly criticized kanhwa Sŏn, in particular, its soteriological efficacy, as follows:

Since [Chan/ Sŏn masters] began to teach people with the hwadu technique, we have yet to hear of anyone who rivaled such masters as Nanyue Huairang and Mazu Daoyi. Even though there are one or two who have attained awakening, there is no one especially outstanding. Besides, such a person is just one among thousands. Other than this person, the rest are wasting their time in vain…How could this not be misleading people? How could Dahui not be a head of such disaster?407

---

407 Yŏ Paekp’a 與白坡 1, Minjok munhwa ch’ujin hoe 1988: 155; for the original Chinese text, see ibid., 57b04-06.
話頭教人以後 更未聞如南岳馬祖者出 或有一二悟得 便無甚奇特 且十百之一耳
外是虛拋浪擲...此豈非誤人 而大慧安得不為禍首也.

Denying any soteriological efficacy of kanhwa Sŏn, Kim argued that the practice could hinder a practitioner’s endeavor to achieve the religious goal. Kim even went further to personally attack Paekp’ŭa in the same letter by describing him as “wasting numerous years in the hermit” and “not being able to penetrate the profound meaning of Buddhism.”

Considering Kim’s fierce attack against kanhwa Sŏn practice as well as Paekp’ŭa who promoted the practice, it is sure that Kim would have equally criticized Ch’ŏ’ŭi if Ch’ŏ’ŭi had expressed any favoritism toward this practice in his works, including his letters to several literati. However, there is no such criticism of Ch’ŏ’ŭi found anywhere in Kim’s entire literary collection. The fact that Ch’ŏ’ŭi hardly mentioned kanhwa Sŏn practice in the circumstance when Chosŏn Buddhist community endorsed the practice and that his close literatus friend Kim, who harshly criticized the practice, never criticized Ch’ŏ’ŭi on that issue implies that Ch’ŏ’ŭi at least did not regard kanhwa Sŏn practice as a superior practice, even if he was not as critical as Kim.

Ch’ŏ’ŭi went even further to deny any soteriological superiority of Sŏn in general. He argued that other forms of Buddhist practices played the same role as Sŏn. For example, according to him, reciting the scriptures could bring about enlightenment as Sŏn does:

If one can read and recite Mahāyāna scriptures and wash off the maculations of his mind, he will accomplish “cessation and contemplation” without effort and easily return to the true reality. What is the true reality? It is the origin of the nature.”

能讀誦大乘 洗濯心垢 自然成就止觀 而易復於實際 實際者何 性之本也.

---

408 Ibid., 149 and 150; for the original text, see ibid., 55b04 and b06-07.

409 Mihwangsa manil hoegi 美黃寺萬日會記, Ch’ŏ’ŭi sigo 2, HPC 10, 863c18-20.
Here, the practice of “reading and reciting the Mahāyāna scriptures” is probably related to Pure Land practice rather than the doctrinal studies since Ch’oūi made this statement on his record of the Pure Land Society. Yet, Ch’oūi elsewhere suggested that Kyo makes an equivalent soteriological contribution to Sŏn when he gave the following comment to a famous kongan case, which describes “Vimalakīrti’s thuddering silence.”

The great import [of this kongan] is the following: The dharma-gate of non-duality is endowed with one single path leading upward, in which speaking and silence reveal [the truth] together, getting over the error of speaking only or silence only. 410

By arguing that silence and words together constitute the path toward enlightenment, Ch’oūi proposed the jointed role of Sŏn and Kyo in following that path. In Ch’oūi’s writings, the claim of Sŏn’s superiority to Kyo, often found in Paekp’a, is almost never mentioned.

As expected from his lack of a systematic soteriological schema, Ch’oūi gave no further hint of his view of the soteriological roles of Sŏn and Kyo. Instead, he asserted that they are never different from each other in their qualities of dharma transmission.

Since all words and phrases the Buddha and patriarchs left derive from this “full capacity” and “great function,” they become Kyo and Sŏn. There is no single word from the Twelve Divisions of the Kyo school as well as one thousand seven hundred kongan cases of the Sŏn school that is established alone, departing from capacity and function. If one gets attached to existence and non-existence in accord with what is covered and uncovered in numerous chapters of phrases [from these texts], he loses their meaning. 411

410 Ch’oūi sŏngwa, Yong’un 1985: 412.1-412.2

411 Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ŏ HPC 10, 825c07-12.
Here, Ch’oůi referred to Kyo as scriptures in which the Buddha explains mind by conceptual linguistic expressions while Sŏn as the kong’an texts in which the Chan and Sŏn masters directly point to mind by non-linguistic or non-conceptual expressions. According to Ch’oůi, since Sŏn and Kyo are the words of such enlightened persons as the Buddha and patriarchs, they reflect the same qualities of their enlightenment: both Sŏn and Kyo have “capacity” and “function,” the two aspects of the true mind. For Ch’oůi, Sŏn and Kyo are the same from the standpoint of mind though they are different in the rhetoric they use to express that mind.

Ch’oůi even nullified any significance of a rhetorical difference between Sŏn and Kyo by giving these two strands of Buddhism a new definition:

A virtuous ancient master said, “Sŏn is the mind of the Buddha; Kyo is the words of the Buddha.” Since the words are produced from mind, there are no words different from mind. Since mind is the source of the words, mind is not different from the words. Hence, if one realizes mind and forgets the words, Kyo becomes Sŏn. If one is obstructed by the words and is deluded in mind, Sŏn becomes Kyo. Another virtuous ancient master said, “If one who understands in accord with the words says of [suchness] with his mouth, then not only the traces of the teachings of the Twelve Divisions of the scriptures of the three vehicles, but also holding up a flower on Vulture Peak, facing the wall in the Shaolin temple, the eminent monks’ mysterious words and wondrous phrases, shouting and beating all would become the traces of Kyo. If one…realizes in mind, then not only holding up a flower, facing the wall would become the special transmission outside the teaching, but also the Twelve Divisions of the scriptures of the three vehicles and the vulgar words and the trivial speeches of the mundane world all would be a secret leading upward [to enlightenment].

古德云 禪是佛心 敎是佛語 言由心發故無異心之言 心是言本故 無異言之心故 悟心忘言 敎為禅也 滯言迷心 禪為敎也 古德云 若隨語生解者 但說之於口 則非但三乘十二分敎 爲敎跡 霞鶴拈華少林面壁 宗師玄言妙句 一棒一喝 亦皆是敎跡 若…得之於心 非但拈華面壁 是敎外別傳 三乘十二分敎 乃至世間麁言細語 皆是向上一竅也.

Ch’oůi defined Sŏn and Kyo in terms of enlightenment and non-enlightenment, quoting the two old masters. The first ancient master Ch’oůi quoted is Zongmi and Chinul while the second is

---

412 Ibid., 828b23-c09.
Ch’ŏnch’aek. With the words of these two Chinese and Korean masters who claimed the identity of Sŏn and Kyo, Ch’oŭi suggested that the rhetorical difference could not be an ultimate criterion to distinguish Sŏn and Kyo. According to him, Sŏn and Kyo are not fixed in certain rhetorical styles, but are instead decided by the relationship to the true mind or enlightenment. Whether a certain expression is linguistic or non-linguistic, or whether it is conceptual or non-conceptual, if it leads a practitioner to enlightenment without generating attachment, it becomes Sŏn; if not, it becomes Kyo.

Ch’oŭi sounds similar to Zongmi and Ch’ŏnch’aek in defining Sŏn and Kyo in this way. However, what makes Ch’oŭi different from these two “ancient masters” is that he used the implication of this new definition of the two strands of Buddhism to connect Buddhism and Confucianism. This connection can be shown in Ch’oŭi’s reply to a literatus, who asked the following question:

With what samādhi could one create equality and contemplate the fact that emptiness and form are neither one nor two? With what difference could one enter the realm of non-difference?413

得何三昧 作平等 觀空色不二不二非一 以何差別 入無差別．

Although the literatus is described as “neither being born in the time of the Buddha nor coming across any practitioner of the Way” (生違佛世 不遇道者)414 in Ch’oŭi’s reply, he clearly seems to have a certain degree of knowledge of Buddhism. Ch’oŭi praised this literatus as follows:

You, master, were born and grew in the Confucian grove, advocated the learning of the [Confucian] sages, rose early to high court rank, helped the state and comforted its people. When with so little time to spare did you get interested in the canonical scriptures [of Buddhism] and familiar with the learning of the Buddhist monks? You by yourself believed, enjoyed, and understood all the teachings of the mundane world

413 Sang ilmi sŏnsaeng sŏ 上一味先生書, Ch’oŭi sigo 2, HPC 10, 868c08-09.
414 Ibid., 869a04.
which are difficult to believe, and already reached the realm of neither cultivation nor realization.\footnote{Ibid., 868c03-06.}

From regulating the family, governing people, helping the state, to pacifying the world, there is not a single thing that is not the Buddhist work for Your Highness. This refers to the place where one does not cultivate and yet cultivates everywhere. This refers to the time when one cuts off realization and yet there is no time when it has not been realized.\footnote{Ibid., 869a17-20.}

Ch’oũi exalted the literatus as reaching the realm of “neither cultivation nor realization,” the highest level of Buddhism.\footnote{In the same letter, Ch’oũi described this realm as the highest level of Buddhism, quoting the \textit{Sishierzhang jing} 四十二章經: Ibid., 868c24-a06).} It is interesting that Ch’oũi suggested that the literatus had reached that level only by practicing the Confucian ideal of the private and public life and that practicing these Confucian ideals are “Buddhist service” for that literatus. Of course, Ch’oũi here did not explicitly state that the practice of these Confucian ideals is Sŏn. However, inferring from his new definition of Sŏn and Kyo, the practice is indeed Sŏn, at least, for that literatus. Ch’oũi’s statement that the literatus has attained the highest goal of Buddhism might be just a complimentary remark to the literatus, who belongs to high social class. However, with that statement, Ch’oũi showed to the literatus and possibly to the literati class as a whole his willingness to accommodate Buddhism or Sŏn Buddhism at Confucian-dominant Chosŏn society. By stating that the highest level of Buddhism can be achieved by practicing Confucian ideals and by implying that anything that could bring about enlightenment is Sŏn, he endorsed, or created
an impression to endorse, Confucianism as well as the literati approach to Buddhism, whether it is reciting scriptures, practicing Sŏn, or studying Buddhist doctrines.

From this vantage point, Ch’o’ŭi endorsed Confucian cultures of Chosŏn. One such example was poetry composition that was widespread among Chosŏn literati not only as a practice for civil service exams but also as a leisure activity. Ch’o’ŭi himself was renowned for his serene and refined poetry among literati. Kwŏn Yŏn-ha 權璉夏 (1813-1896), Hong Hyŏn-chu, and Kim Chŏng-hi, all of whom were close to Ch’o’ŭi, even compared him to Guan Xiu 貫休 (832-912), a famous Tang poet monk.418 His poems, however, are not necessarily Buddhist. Many of his more than 400 poems are not directly related to Buddhism. In the preface for Ch’o’ŭi’s poetry collection, Sin Wi praised him, saying that even such famous Song Chinese poet monks as Daoqian 道潛 (1043-1106) and Congshu 聰殊 (d.u.) could not be compared to Ch’o’ŭi because “his poems shake off [the traces of those who only eat] herbs and shoots [i.e. Buddhist monks]” (其詩擺落蔬筍).419 As mentioned in chapter one, Ch’o’ŭi often exchanged his poems and formed poetry-gatherings with many literati, writing prefaces for literati’s collections. Some of these literati who befriended Ch’o’ŭi regarded poetry composition as Buddhist practice rather than mere literary activity or training for civil service exams. For example, Hong Hyŏn-chu, who called himself “Haegŏ toin” (a religious practitioner who resided near ocean 海居道人), said in his letter to Ch’o’ŭi that his sole “Buddhist service” was poetry composition.420 Sin Wi even directly connected this literatus activity to Sŏn. He sent the

418 Ilchiam munjip 2, HPC 12, 272a4-6.
419 HPC10, 831a13-14.
420 Ch’o’ŭi sigo 1, HPC 10, 852b11.
following poem to Ch’o’ūi, in which he compared Ch’o’ūi and himself to Daoqian and Su Shi

蘇軾 (1037-1101):

Daoqian and old Po [i.e. Su Shi] mellowed around together;
I have finally tasted this pleasure these days of old age.
Bitter tea is potent but good for guarding against the mundane;
Composing poetry in a scenic place accords with Sŏn meditation.421

道潛坡老共周旋 此樂衰秊有此年 苦茗嚴時宜砭俗 好詩佳處合叅禪.

Ch’o’ūi supported this activity of poetry composition by correlating it to one of the most popular Buddhist notions, “Maitreya’s descent” (K. Mirûk hasaeng 彌勒下生):

Though I step on family hometown, there is nothing I can do there;
The world is difficult to know even one phrase [of poetry] that is perfectly bright.
If one phrase could be clearly understood,
Who would complain the delay of Maitreya’s descent?422

着腳家鄉無可為 圓明一句世難知 一句如能明得了 誰嫌彌勒下生遲.

Under Ch’o’ūi’s endorsement of poetry composition lies his understanding of the relationship between Buddhism and Confucianism. As shown above, Ch’o’ūi’s new definitions of Sŏn and Kyo in terms of enlightenment/ non-enlightenment deny not only the distinction between the two strands of Buddhism but also distinction between the two religions. In fact, any distinctions between certain religions or certain types of practice are meaningless. What is really important for him is its relation to enlightenment. Based on this understanding, he connected Confucian cultures or ethics to Buddhism. In his postface for Hong’s poetry collection, Ch’o’ūi spoke of Hong Hyŏn-chu, who confessed his little experience of Buddhist practice except poetry writing, in the following way:

421 Ch’o’ūi sigo 1, HPC 10, 846c20-21.

422 Sujongsa ch’a Sŏgok hwasang 水鍾寺次石屋和尚, Ch’o’ūi sigo 1, HPC 10, 840c16-17
Because this one piece of numinous calyx shines brightly in the nature-heaven, whenever he [i.e. Hong] acts or stops, speaks or remains silent, takes or yields, and goes forward or backward, he always moves courteously with the mind of propriety…Speaking of his poems…they also derive from the quintessence of this nature.  

哉 由是一片靈臺 昭然獨燿於性天之內 凡行止語默 揖讓進退 無不莊以莅之 動之以禮心者也…若其詩…亦由所發於是性之精英也.

For Ch’o’ui, a poem, in particular, a good poem, even if it is not related to Buddhism, manifests the original numinous nature, and thus serves as a token for its author’s attainment of Buddhahood, making it unnecessary to wait for Maitreya’s descent. As Ch’o’ui stated in above quotation, this manifestation of the Buddha nature or the revelation of the innate Buddha is not limited to the activity of poetry composition; it could be achieved through the practice of “propriety” (K. ye 礼), the Confucian social code of conduct that regulated every dimension of life in Chosŏn. According to him, the right practice of propriety, even without actual Buddhist practice, is an undeniable sign of enlightenment or the full manifestation of one’s Buddha nature. In this way, Ch’o’ui endorsed Confucian cultures and ethics in Confucian-dominant Chosŏn society.

5. Concluding Remarks

Ch’o’ui adovated the unity of various types of Sŏn as well as Sŏn and its archirival Kyo by criticizing Paekp’a’s hierarchical understanding of Buddhism. According to Ch’o’ui, various types of Sŏn—the two types Sŏn of tathāgata/ principle and patriarch/ outside-the-format, Samch’ŏ chŏnsim, and Five Sŏn Houses—are the same level of Sŏn since they are all manifestations of the true mind or enlightenment; Sŏn and Kyo are also the same level since they originated from the same enlightened mind of the Buddha Śākyamuni.

---

423 Haegŏ toin sjip pal 海居道人詩集跋, Ch’o’ui sigo 2, HPC 10, 867a14-21.
Ch’oŭi’s position on the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo is surely different from that of Paekp’a, who took the traditional Korean view on that issue. In fact, the tension between these two positions is caused by the age-long accusation Sŏn makes against Kyo of being incapable of leading to the ultimate goal of the religion: although Kyo might be helpful in that it gives an orientation to the soteriological journey, the conceptualizing nature of Kyo makes it incompetent in bringing about enlightenment, which is beyond all concepts. Regarding this Sŏn accusation against Kyo, Ch’oŭi suggested that the rhetoric of Kyo also leads to the ultimate goal of the religion by defining Sŏn and Kyo in a new way: if a certain expression leads to enlightenment, regardless of its rhetorical style, it is Sŏn; if not, it is Kyo. According to this definition, the conceptual explanations of Buddhism and even Confucianism could become Sŏn if they result in enlightenment. Ch’oŭi’s new definition of Sŏn and Kyo, therefore, vindicates Confucianism and the literati’s intellectual approach to Buddhism. However, he did not explain how this enlightenment could be accomplished. He showed little interest in outlining a systematic soteriological process.

In fact, this lack of a systematic soteriology in his works is probably related to his attitude toward the related issue of “sudden and gradual.” For Ch’oŭi, enlightenment is not attained through a gradual process. Just as the two aspects of mind are inseparable, the process of realizing these aspects is also inseparable. According to him, one realizes either both or none of the two aspects of mind. Ch’oŭi did not accept any steps in the path toward enlightenment: enlightenment for him is the sudden and full realization of the two aspects of mind.
CONCLUSION

1. The Legacy of the Debate

Paek’pa and Ch’oûï’s theories of Sŏn prompted controversy in the Korean Sŏn community. The preface to Udam Honggi’s 優昙洪基 (1822-1881) Sŏnmun chûngjông nok 禪門證正錄 records this situation:

The elder Paek’pa commented on the Sŏnmun yŏmsong, based on Linji’s teaching of Three Statements, and published the Sŏnmun sugyŏng. His theories prevailed for a while. When compared to what is in Chungbu [i.e. Ch’oûï]’s [Sŏnmun sabyŏn] manŏ, they contradict each other. Students of the Way are concerned about it [i.e. the contradictions].

Such later Sŏn masters as Sŏltu Yuhyŏng 雪竇有炯 (1824-1889), Udam Honggi, and Ch’ugwŏn Chinha 笛源震河 (1861-1926) took the side of either Paek’pa or Ch’oûï, presenting new rationales for their positions and criticizing the other, in particular, on the issue of the relationship between the four types of Sŏn: tathāgata Sŏn, patriarch Sŏn, principle Sŏn, and outside-the-format Sŏn.

Yuhyŏng, a second generation master succeeding Paek’pa, defended Paek’pa’s three-fold taxonomy of Sŏn in the Sŏnwŏn soryu 禪源溯流. In doing so, he accepted most of Paek’pa’s rationales for the three-fold taxonomy of Sŏn: killing/giving life; the three places of mind-transmission; a genuine-gold store/a general merchandise store. What is interesting in Yuhyŏng’s defense of Paek’pa’s taxonomy is his justification for the latter’s hierarchization of tathāgata Sŏn and patriarch Sŏn. As seen in chapter four, Paek’pa traced the origin of the two

424 Sŏnmun chûngjông nok, HPC 10, 1136b09-12
types of Sŏn back to Šākyamuni Buddha by arguing that the Buddha had transmitted tathāgata Sŏn and patriarch Sŏn before the Stūpa of Many Sons and on Vulture Peak, respectively.

Paekp’a’s explanation of the origin of the two types of Sŏn inevitably raises a question of why tathāgata Sŏn is regarded as inferior, despite the fact that both types of Sŏn had the same origin. Yuhyŏng provided an answer for this question by employing a unique Korean Sŏn invention that had developed during the Koryŏ period. He argued:

Because Queen Chinsŏng asked of the meanings of Sŏn and Kyo, Pŏmil, a state preceptor of Silla, answered: The World-Honored One was awakened to the Way by seeing the morning star. He found out that the dharma to which he had awakened did not reach the ultimate and thus wandered around for ten months seeking out the patriarch. He eventually received the transmission of the ultimate tenet [from that patriarch]. What the Tathāgata awakened to is called tathāgata Sŏn. What the patriarch transmitted is called patriarch Sŏn. Because of this, tathāgata Sŏn is inferior to patriarch Sŏn.  

This story of the “patriarch Returning to the Truth” (K. Chin’gwi chosa 真歸祖師) first appears in Chinjŏng Ch’ŏnch’aek’s 淑靖天頑 (d.u) Sŏnmun pojangnok 禪門寶藏錄. The Chosŏn Sŏn master Hyujŏng also mentions it in his Sŏn’gyo sŏk 禪敎釋.  

Ch’ŏnch’aek reports that Pŏmil 梵日 (810-889) first introduced the story, citing the Talma millok 達磨密錄 and the Haedong ch’iltaerok 海東七大錄, texts whose existence cannot be verified in any other Chinese and Korean Buddhist texts. The story of Chin’gwi chosa directly controverts the traditional Buddhist belief that Šākyamuni’s awakening under the Bodhi tree was his own unsurpassed experience of truth itself. This story of his post-enlightenment experience  

---

425 Sŏnwŏn soryu, HPC 10, 653b15-20.

426 Sŏnmun pojangnok, HPC 6, 470b06-08 and 474a07-12; Sŏn’gyo sŏk, HPC 7, 654c08-11.
is not found in Indian or Chinese Buddhist literature. It was probably forged by Ch’ŏnch’aek himself or Korean Sŏn monks of the time. Unaware of its Korean origin, Yuhyŏng legitimized the hierarchy between tathāgata Sŏn and patriarch Sŏn by employing this story in which the former is described as the imperfect dharma awakened to by Śākyamuni Buddha, while the latter is the supreme dharma transmitted from Chin’gwi chosa.

Yuhyŏng also accepted Paekp’a’s theory that these two different levels of Sŏn were transmitted through two separate events of Samch’ŏ chonsim. Yuhyŏng first connected the “sword that kills people” to the first mind-transmission before the Stūpa of Many Sons where Śākyamuni shared his seat with Mahākāśyapa; and the “sword that gives life people” to the second transmission on Vulture Peak, where the Buddha held up a flower and the disciple smiled in response.427 Yuhyŏng, then, argued that “‘killing’ is called tathāgata Sŏn because it is what the Tathāgata awakened to, while ‘giving life’ is called patriarch Sŏn because it is what the patriarch transmitted” (以爲殺是如來悟底 故名如來禪 活是祖師傳底 故名祖師禪) without providing any further explanation.428 For Yuhyŏng, therefore, tathāgata Sŏn corresponds to “killing,” the first transmission, and the Tathāgata’s awakening; patriarch Sŏn, to “giving life,” the second transmission, and the patriarch’s transmission.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tathāgata Sŏn</th>
<th>killing</th>
<th>first transmission</th>
<th>Šākyamuni</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>patriarch Sŏn</td>
<td>giving life</td>
<td>second transmission</td>
<td>Patriarch of Returing to the Truth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

427 Sŏnwŏn soryu, HPC 10, 655a16-18 and 22-24.
428 Ibid, 656a08-10.
Yuhyŏng’s explanation reveals his subordination of Kyo to Sŏn. By applying the story of Chin’gwi chosa in order to advocate the superiority of patriarch Sŏn to tathāgata Sŏn, he shared with Paekp’a the view that only certain schools of Sŏn—i.e. Linji and Yunmen in Paekp’a’s three-fold taxonomy—possessed the supreme dharma and others, including the Kyo scholastic schools, are therefore inferior to these two schools of Sŏn.

In the Sŏnmun chūngjŏngnok, Udam Honggi, a tenth generation successor of Puhyu Sŏnsu, adopted Ch’o’u’s positions on most of the issues involved in the Sŏn taxonomies of the two monks. Unlike Ch’o’u, however, Honggi admitted Kyo’s subordination to Sŏn by employing the story of Chin’gwi chosa.

What is called “tathāgata Sŏn” refers to the second statement to which the Tathāgata got awakened before Mt. Chŏnggak (Correct Awakening), seeing the morning star...This is called tathāgata Sŏn because it is the type of Sŏn that the Tathāgata got awakened himself. It is like the principle of revealing favorable auspices and moving the earth. [It is also like] the signs and traces of the scriptural teaching. Thus, it is also called principle Sŏn. What is called “patriarch Sŏn” refers to the first statement that the World-Honored One finally realized [from Chin’gwi chosa] after he discovered that his own awakening had not reached the ultimate and thus wandered around to seek out the patriarch Returning to the Truth...This is called patriarch Sŏn because the World-Honored One received it from Chin’gwi chosa...This [Sŏn] stays away forever from the principle of revealing favorable auspices and moving the earth, and can go beyond the scriptural teaching. Thus, it is also called outside-the-format Sŏn.429

According to Honggi, tathāgata Sŏn refers to the Tathāgata’s own awakening, the level of which can be represented by the second statement of Linji’s three statements. This Sŏn is also identified with principle Sŏn as well as the teachings of the scriptures. On the other hand,

429 Sŏnmun chūngjŏngnok, HPC10, 1138b17-c10.
patriarch Sŏn is *Chin’gwi chosa*’s transmission of the dharma, which is equivalent to the first statement. This Sŏn is called outside-the-format Sŏn because it transcends linguistic expression. He also argued that the three mind-transmissions all belong to the first statement, which corresponds to patriarch Sŏn’s outside-the-format (*三傳 總屬於第一句祖師禪之格外*).\(^{430}\) By tracing the origins of these two types of Sŏn to the story of *Chin’gwi chosa*, however, Honggi accepted the hierarchy between tathāgata Sŏn and patriarch Sŏn, and by extension, Sŏn and Kyo, just as had Paekp’a and Yuhyŏng.

### Table 11. Udam Honggi

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tathāgata Sŏn</th>
<th>second statement</th>
<th>Kyō</th>
<th>principle Sŏn</th>
<th>Šākyamuni</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>patriarch Sŏn</td>
<td>first statement</td>
<td>Sŏn</td>
<td>outside-the-format Sŏn</td>
<td><em>Chin’gwi chosa</em></td>
<td><em>samch’ŏ chŏnsim</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ch’ugwŏn Chinha (1826-1926) criticized Paekp’a from Ch’oŭi’s standpoint in the *Sŏnmun chaejŏngnok* 禪門再正錄, rather than offering his own account of the four types of Sŏn. Chinha first emphasized the identity between principle Sŏn and outside-the-format Sŏn:

> 若以佛祖落草之談 爲義理禪 則義理 不是別法 自是如來之法也 祖師之法也 明矣.

Chinha argued, just as had Ch’oŭi, that principle Sŏn and outside-the-format Sŏn are different only in their rhetoric. According to Chinha, principle Sŏn refers to the Sŏn that follows the

---

\(^{430}\) Ibid., 1138b15-16.

\(^{431}\) *Sŏnmun chaejŏngnok*, HPC 11, 868a19-21
principle of concepts by which the Buddha and patriarchs taught sentient beings. Because principle Sŏn also originated from the enlightened mind, it is not different from outside-the-format Sŏn, which draws on such non-linguistic means as silence, striking, and shouting. Therefore, based on these definitions of principle Sŏn and outside-the-format Sŏn, Kyo corresponds to the former while Sŏn to, either type of Sŏn, depending on its use of language.

Chinha, then, criticized Paek’a for describing tathāgata Sŏn as “kyooe” (outside the teaching 敎外) and “kyŏgoe” (outside the format 格外). In doing so, Chinha introduced new definitions of Kyo (teaching) and kyŏk (format):

There are three deep and shallow types in Kyo. One is the words that are the expressions. Second is the principle that is expressed by words...Third is forgetting words and cutting off thought. This [third] is tathāgata Sŏn.433

Since Chinha did not give any further explanations of the meaning of Kyo and kyŏk, it is not sure exactly what he meant by these definitions of Kyo and kyŏk. In my opinion, however, three types of Kyo refers to: (1) words as signifiers; (2) the concepts or ideas that are signified by those words; (3) the reality that transcends words, but can be attained through a practice based on words. The two types of kyŏk are: (1) the format of the linguistic principle; (2) the traces of Kyo, which probably refers to the non-descriptive and non-referential use of language of Sŏn.

432 Ibid, 868b16-c02.
433 Ibid. 869c12-14.
434 Ibid., 870a02-07.
Despite such ambiguity, according to his definition, tathāgata Sŏn is regarded as being within both Kyo and kyŏk. Defining tathāgata Sŏn this way, Chinha condemned Paek’’a’s definition of tathāgata Sŏn. Although Chinha did not give a direct account of the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo in his writings, he probably took the position of advocating the unity of these two strands of Buddhism, considering his view that principle Sŏn and outside-the-format Sŏn represents the same level of truth.

Although their theories sometimes became overly scholastic, Yuhyŏng, Honggi, and Chinha complemented Ch’oŭi and Paek’’a’s theories, presenting their own distinctive theories, in particular, on the meaning of tathāgata Sŏn and patriarch Sŏn.

2. The Religious Meaning of Paek’’a and Ch’oŭi’s Discourse

The relationship between Sŏn and Kyo that Paek’’a and Ch’oŭi tackled involves soteriological, ontological, epistemological, and linguistic issues. Here, I will discuss the questions regarding: (1) the nature of enlightenment and practice; (2) the soteriological role of doctrinal concepts or doctrinal studies.

1) The nature of enlightenment and religious practice

The relationship between the two strands of Buddhism raises the following questions in relation to the nature of enlightenment and practice: is enlightenment attained in a series of sequential stages or all at once? To put it another way, does enlightenment take place in a sudden or gradual manner? Does religious practice contribute to triggering the experience of enlightenment or does it flow out of that experience spontaneously?

In the history of Chinese Buddhism, Daosheng 道生 (355-434) first stirred up debate about awakening and practice in terms of sudden and gradual. He advocated the concept of
“sudden awakening” against that of “gradual awakening” promoted by Huiguan 慧觀 (363-443). Huiguan claimed that there were a series of steps to follow in Buddhist practice and awakening, employing the analogy of mountain-climbing in which the higher one climbs, the wider his or her view becomes. On the contrary, Daosheng asserted that since the truth itself is non-dual, awakening to it cannot be accomplished in steps. For Daosheng, awakening is a one-time experience that occurs all at once, not in a gradual manner. He, however, did not totally deny Huiguan’s gradual approach. Although he championed “sudden awakening,” Daosheng accepted a series of practices as necessary to attain the ultimate awakening.\footnote{For details of the debate between the two, see Kim Young-ho Kim 1990: 29-34 and Lai 1987: 169-200.}

Shenhui (684-758) was perhaps the best-known Chinese figure to use the concepts of sudden and gradual polemically. He attacked the Northern school, the most popular Chan school of his time, as inferior because the school, he argued, taught gradual doctrines about awakening and practice. According to Shenhui, the Northern school masters prescribed a formula to gradually purify oneself along a path leading to perfect awakening: they urged followers to engage themselves in the long process of practices and cultivate their minds for achieving that ultimate goal. Shenhui despised this Northern approach as dualistic and gradual and claimed that his approach was non-dual and sudden, focusing on the realm beyond all forms of dualism.\footnote{Gregory 2002: 17-18.}

Daosheng and Huiguan accepted a series of steps in practice as necessary, although they differed on whether awakening is accomplished only once in its entirety or gradually as each step is completed. On the other hand, Shenhui raised a question about the very nature of Buddhist practice: how can it contribute to awakening? Is it a necessary precondition for awakening?
As John McRae points out, Shenhui weakened the concept of practice as an intentional and conscious effort. According to McRae, although Shenhui admitted the concept of gradual spiritual growth, he believed it to be spontaneous and to develop naturally, as shown in his analogy of a child, who is complete at birth, growing into an adult. For Shenhui, Buddhist practice naturally flows out of the experience of awakening.

Zongmi and Chinul emphasized the necessity of religious practice, presenting a soteriological schema of “sudden awakening followed by gradual cultivation.” In this schema, these two Chan/ Sŏn masters reconciled sudden and gradual approach to enlightenment and practice. In doing so, they introduced two kinds of awakening: “understanding awakening” and “realization awakening.” The former is the moment one gains true awareness of the world as suchness with the study of Buddhist doctrines and always occurs in a sudden manner, whereas the latter is the process toward perfection in which one embodies the truth by removing the defilements gradually. This schema, therefore, can be reformulated in the following three stages: “understanding awakening – gradual cultivation – realization awakening.” Through this model, Zongmi and Chinul required religious practice as a necessary condition for the consummation of one’s awakening.

Paekp’a interpreted the schema of “sudden awakening/ gradual cultivation” from the Linji Chan perspective. In particular, he used Chinul’s schema in the Chŏryo, which integrated kanhwasa Sŏn technique to bring about realization-awakening. Paekp’a presented his synthetic model that combined the Linji and Heze soteriologies by correlating Chinul’s three-mystery stages to his three-fold taxonomy of Sŏn. In this model: (1) Paekp’a’s principle Sŏn, or the third of Linji’s three statements, represents the first stage of the soteriological journey, which

---

corresponds to Chinul’s understanding awakening and mystery in the essence; (2) tathāgata Sŏn, or the second statement, occupies the second stage, which correlates to Chinul’s gradual cultivation and mystery in the word; (3) patriarch Sŏn, or the third statement, is placed on the final third stage, which corresponds to Chinul’s realization awakening and mystery in the mystery. In Paekp’a’s correspondences, the exclusive soteriological role of kanhwa Sŏn practice in generating the experience of enlightenment is emphasized as a gradual practice cultivated after initial sudden awakening.

Paekp’a, in his three-fold taxonomy of Sŏn, also emphasized a gradual process leading to the final enlightenment, even more than had Zongmi and Chinul. Paekp’a’s theory of mind, revealed in his taxonomy, justified this process. In his theory, the two aspects of mind, immutability and conditionality, can be understood separately at a certain stage of one’s spiritual journey: (1) at the level of principle Sŏn, one understands the two aspects of mind conceptually; (2) at that of tathāgata Sŏn, one realizes only the immutable or empty aspect; (3) at that of patriarch Sŏn, one finally realizes both aspects fully and perfectly. Paekp’a, therefore, could secure the necessity of religious practice in this three-stage path by emphasizing the gradual aspect in enlightenment and practice.

Ch’oũi, on the contrary, did not regard enlightenment as occurring in a gradual manner. For him, enlightenment took place all at once without separate stages, just as the truth itself is inseparable. However, Ch’oũi’s emphasis on the differences between true and deluded minds weakens the necessity and efficacy of religious practice, though it does not deny them, as shown by the fact that he provided no specific soteriological regimen. According to Ch’oũi, religious practice is not even necessarily Buddhist: rather, following a Confucian ideal in one’s personal and public life could replace Buddhist practice. He went further to suggest that this practice of
Confucianism, in fact, flows naturally from the enlightened state of mind. Therefore, for Ch’oŭi, Buddhism does not have a monopoly on enlightenment. It can be manifested in its essence in a Confucian form. Benevolence, righteousness, propriety and wisdom (K. in ŭi ye chi 仁義禮智), the four main elements of the human nature in Confucianism, correspond to the essence of the true mind in Buddhism, as shown in his praise of the yangban literocrat Hong Hyŏn-ju.

2) The soteriological role of doctrinal concepts or doctrinal studies

Paek’a and Ch’oŭi’s discourse on the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo asks the following questions regarding doctrinal concepts or doctrinal studies: what role does the conceptual and descriptive language of the scriptural texts have in Buddhist soteriology? Does doctrine hinder Buddhist training, leading only to mental defilements? Do doctrinal studies merely reify the truth of reality, traditionally believed to be beyond the purview of language?

Mental defilements, such as greed, anger, and ignorance, bind sentient beings in the endless cycle of birth-and-death. Thus, in order to liberate from this cycle and attain enlightenment, one first has to remove these defilements. Very generally, Buddhism attributes the principal cause of mental defilements to mental constructs (kalpanā), which, in turn, is caused by prapañca. Prapañca, regarding Buddhist soteriology, refers to the dichotomizing tendency that produces such bifurcations as self/ others, subject/ object, and existence/ non-existence.\footnote{For details, see Tachikawa 1993: 188-192 and Harris 1991: 18-24.}

Prapañca in its nature is closely related to linguistic activity. Therefore, an important question arises: whether doctrinal or scholastic use of language leads inevitably to prapañca, and
thus hinders the achievement of the ultimate goal of Buddhism. Youru Wang demonstrates that many Mahāyāna scriptures and commentaries recognize the inappropriateness of doctrinal concepts, citing one of Nāgārjuna’s famous statements in the *Mūlamadhyamakārikā* 18.7:

“Where the reach of thought turns back, language turns back. The nature of things is, like complete cessation, without origin and without decay.”

According to Wang, this statement, in fact, intends to deny the referential and descriptive language, generally found in scriptural and commentarial texts, rather than language as a whole. Wang, then, concludes that it is widespread perception in many Mahāyāna texts that this type of language serves as a main cause of reification.

For this reason, doctrinal concepts, and by extension, doctrinal studies do not get much credit in many strands of Buddhist soteriology. Meditation rather than these intellectual activities is considered as bringing about the experience of enlightenment. As seen in previous chapters, since meditation formed an independent branch of Buddhist schools in medieval China, doctrinal studies or even doctrinal concepts had at times been excluded from the discourse on the Chan/ Sŏn soteriology, at least, rhetorically. Although some reactions to such exclusion of Jiao/Kyo occurred within the Chan/ Sŏn school, Jiao/Kyo could not secure an equivalent status with Chan/ Sŏn. For example, in the Heze-oriented practical schema of sudden awakening/gradual cultivation, Jiao/Kyo leads to “understanding awakening,” in which the traces of intellectual approach still remain. Therefore, it serves as a preliminary step in Chan/ Sŏn meditation.

Chinul clearly confirmed the limits of Kyo in the following statement:

---

439 Emmanuel 2013: 247; Wang (2003: 110) gives the following translation for that paragraph, quoting Sprung 1979: 177; “When the object of thought is no more there is nothing for language to refer to. The true nature of things neither arises nor perishes, as nirvāṇa does not.”

440 For Wang’s discussion on Mahāyāna view on language, see Wang 2003: 110-113.
In the Sŏn approach, all these true teaching deriving from the faith and understanding of
the complete and sudden school, which are as numerous as the sands of the Ganges, are
called dead words because they induce people to create the obstacle of understanding.
Nevertheless, with complete descriptions which accord with the nature, they do instruct
beginning students who are not yet able to investigate the live word of the shortcut
approach, and they help to ensure that they have nonretrogressive faith and
understanding.⁴⁴¹

Accepting the Heze based Chan/ Sŏn soteriology that developed in mid Chosŏn, Paekp’a shared
its views of the limits of Kyo and the emphasis on Sŏn in his three-stage schema.

Ch’oûi, on the contrary, affirmed the descriptive and referential language of Kyo by re-
defining Sŏn and Kyo in terms of enlightenment and non-enlightenment. According to him,
any type of rhetoric belongs to Sŏn if it leads to enlightenment. Ch’oûi’s definition, in fact,
agrees with the traditional Chan/ Sŏn view of language. Language does not have any power on
its own in bringing about or hindering the soteriological goal of Buddhism. Whether the
language of Sŏn or Kyo, it can be the live or dead word, according to the way that language is
used. Ch’oûi even looked at doctrinal studies in more positive terms. As shown in his
endorsement of the literati’s approach to Buddhism by directly connecting it to Buddhist
enlightenment, doctrinal studies, based on descriptive and referential uses of language, are not
necessarily related to prapañca.

3) Concluding Remarks

The activities of Paekp’a, Ch’oûi, and other Korean monks of the late Chosŏn controvert
the negative image of Buddhism of the time, demonstrating that the religion was not moribund

⁴⁴¹ Kanhwa kyŏrûiron, HPC 4, 733a15-19; the translation is quoted from Buswell 1983: 240.
but was, in fact, very much alive. These monks exerted themselves to adapt Buddhism to a Chosŏn society in which Confucian ideology dominated. They practiced Confucian social ethics, such as loyalty and filial piety, and modified Buddhist doctrines to fit these ethical norms. Such efforts contributed to the yangban literati’s favorable attitude toward Buddhism during this period. Although Buddhism was still nominally regarded as heterodox, the literati class did not see the religion as a threat to the Confucian social order, unlike the evil teaching (sagyo; viz., Christianity) or the enemy of orthodox Confucianism (Yangming learning). Buddhism was therefore able to attract many literati to its beliefs and practices during the latter half of the Chosŏn dynasty. These literati not only befriended renowned monks, but also cultivated Buddhist practices. One of the popular practices of the literati was to engage in such scholastic activities as reading Buddhist texts and discussing Buddhist doctrine. Thanks to this less oppressive social milieu of the late Chosŏn, the Korean Buddhist community was able to revive its tradition. Buddhist monks wrote and published a number of influential doctrinal texts, and delivered several major public lectures, in particular, on Hwaŏm philosophy. The Buddhist institution also established a streamlined monastic curriculum and restored its Sŏn lineage.

Paekp’’a and Ch’o’u’i were examples of the creative developments within Korean Buddhism during this period. These two monks demonstrate that Chosŏn Buddhism was inextricably woven into the socio-religious fabric of the time, developing new approaches to Buddhist thought and practice that responded to the contemporary religious needs of the Korean people. Paekp’’a attempted to resolve perceived internal inconsistencies within Korean Sŏn Buddhism generated by its different sectarian affiliations in terms of genealogy and soteriology. Linji’s teaching of “three statements, three mysteries, and three essentials” provided the basic framework for his attempt. With this teaching, Paekp’’a presented three-fold taxonomy of Sŏn
by which he introduced a new definition of the Linji/Imje school into Korean Sŏn Buddhism. This Linji/Imje school would recognize “sudden awakening/gradual cultivation” as its main practical schema. Paekp’a’s theories, which reinterpreted the Linji and Heze teachings of the Chinese Chan tradition, were a response to the reality of Korean Buddhism during the late Chosŏn in which the dominant Sŏn lineages espoused Kyo teachings.

Ch’oŭi embraced the intellectual approach of the yangban literati, who were the source of both financial security and philosophical stimulation for contemporary Korean Buddhism. In so doing, he criticized Paekp’a’s interpretation of Linji’s teaching. By rejecting Paep’a’s three-fold taxonomy and soteriology, he denied the existence of a hierarchy among the different types of Sŏn, and rejected Kyo’s subordination to Sŏn. Ch’oŭi, instead, interpreted Linji’s teaching as advocating the identity of all types of Sŏn, as well as the fundamental affinities between Sŏn and Kyo. His claim of this ultimate identity was, in fact, based on his prioritization of enlightenment. For Ch’oŭi, this final goal of Buddhism defined the highest aspirations of both Sŏn and Kyo, as well as the sumnum bonum of Confucianism and even of the activities of all human beings. Through his religious inclusivism, he secured the status of Buddhism in Chosŏn society by presenting it as a religion that fit perfectly the needs of that society.

Paekp’a and Ch’oŭi’s presentations of Buddhism have had a profound effect on subsequent developments in the Korean Buddhist tradition. The various issues regarding the relationship between Sŏn and Kyo that they examined continue to be topics of real moment in the contemporary Buddhist and scholarly communities. In the 1990s, for example, there were serious debates in Korea about whether Chinul’s soteriological schema should be excluded from orthodox Korean Sŏn Buddhism. These debates revolved around such questions as the nature of enlightenment and practice, along with the role of descriptive and conceptual language and
Kyo doctrinal studies in Sŏn soteriology. These debates, which involved the fundamental questions concerning the self-identity of Korean Sŏn Buddhism, may be slightly less heated now, but still inform deliberations concerning reforms of the monastic curriculum. Thus, the issues that Paekp’a and Ch’oŏi’s tried to address continue to simmer just below the surface of the contemporary tradition. For all these reasons, Paekp’a and Ch’oŏi’s views on Sŏn Buddhism continue to offer important perspectives for examining current issues in contemporary Korean Buddhism.
BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Primary Texts

*Apitan piposha lun* (Abhidharmavibhāṣāstra) 阿毘曇毘婆沙論  T 1546.28.

*Baizhang guanglu* 百丈廣錄  Yanagida 1983: 13

*Chanlin baoxun* 禪林寶訓  T 2022.48.

*Chanlin sengbao chuan* 禪林僧寶傳  X 1560.79.

*Chanyuan zhuquan ji duxu* 禪源諸詮集都序  T 2015.48.

*Chanzong songgu lianzhutong ji* 禪宗頌古聯珠通集  X 1295.65.

*Chanzong zhengmaï* 禪宗正脈  X 1593.85.

*Ch’ŏnghŏdang chip* 清虛堂集  HPC 7, 659c.

*Ch’oŭi sigo* 艸衣詩藁  HPC 10, 830c.

*Ch’oŭi sŏn’gwa* 艸衣禪課  Yongun 1985: 351.

*Ch’oŭi taejongsa t’appimyŏng* 草依大宗師塔碑銘  HPC 10, 869b05.

*Chuan fabao ji* 傳法寶紀  T 2838.85.

*Chuanfa zhengzong ji* 傳法正宗記  T 2078.51.

*Chuanxin fayao* 傳心法要  T 2012A.48.

*Da banniepan jing* (Mahāparinirvāṇasūtra) 大般涅槃經  T 7.1.

*Dafangguangfo huayanjing* 大方廣佛華嚴經  T 278.9.

*Dafangguangfo huayanjing suishu yanyi chao* 大方廣佛華嚴經隨疏演義鈔  T 1736.36.

*Dahui Pujue chanshi fayu* 大慧普覺禪師法語  T 1998.47.

*Dahui pujue chanshi pushuo* 大慧普覺禪師普說  T 1998A.47.
Dasong Seng shilue  

Fenyang Wude chanshi yulu

Foguo yuanwu zhenjue chanshi xinyao

Fozu lidai tognzai

Guzunwu yulu

Ilchiam munjip

Jianzhong jingguo xudenglu

Jingde Chuandeng lu

Kanhwa kyŏrŭi ron

Kyŏngmong yogyŏl

Lengia shizi ji

Liandeng huiyao

Linjian lu

Linji huizhao chanshi taji

Liuzu Dashi fabaotan jing

Miafa lianhua jing

Nanyang heshang wenda zazheng yi

Pŏpchip pyŏrhaengok chŏryo pyŏngip saga

Puti damo nanzong dingshifei lun

P’yŏnyangdang chip

Rentian yanmu
Sajip sagyo chŏngdŭng yŏmsong hwaŏm 四集四敎傳燈拈頌華嚴 HPC 8, 234b17.

Sambong chip 三峯集 HPC 10, 456a.

Samno haengjŏk 三老行蹟 HPC 7, 752b.

Samyŏng songun taesa sŏkchang pimyŏng 四溟松雲大師石藏碑銘 HPC 8, 75b09.

Shan nuren chuan 善女人傳 X 1657.88.

Sŏn'ga kwigam 禪家龜鑑 HPC 7, 626a; 634c.

Song gaoseng chuan 宋高僧傳 T 2061.50.

Sŏn’gyo kyŏl 禪敎訣 HPC 7, 657b.

Sŏn’gyo sŏk 禪敎釋 HPC 7, 654a.

Sŏnmun chaejŏngnok 禪門再正錄 HPC 11, 868a.

Sŏnmun chŭngjŏng nok 禪門證正錄 HPC 10, 1136b.

Sŏnmun kangyo chip 禪門綱要集 HPC 6, 850b.

Sŏnmun Ojong kangyo 禪門五宗綱要 HPC 9, 459c.

Sŏnmun pojangnok 禪門寶藏錄 HPC 6, 479a06.

Sŏnmun sabyŏn man’ŏ 禪門四辨漫語 HPC 10, 820b.

Sŏnmun sugyŏng 禪文手鏡 HPC 10, 514c.

Sŏnmun yŏmsong sŏrhwa 禪門拈頌話 HPC 5, 01a.

Sorim t’ongbang chŏngan 少林通方正眼 HPC 10, 626b.

Sŏnwŏn soryu 禪源溯流 HPC 10, 653b.

Sŏyŏk Chunghwa haedong pulcho wŏllu 西域中華海東佛祖源流 HPC 10, 100a.

Susim kyŏl 修心訣 HPC 4, 708b.

Susŏn kyŏlsamun 修禪結社文 HPC 10, 528a.
T’aego hwasang ŏrok 太古和尚語錄 HPC 6, 669a.

Tanzhou Guishan Lingyou chanshi yulu 潭州潙山靈祐禪師語錄 T 1989.47.

Tasan simun chip 茶山時文集

Tiansheng Guangdeng lu 天聖廣燈錄 X 1553.78.

T’ongdosa sŏlsongdang taesa pimyŏng 通度寺雪松堂大師碑銘

Tŏngsa yŏlchŏn 東師列傳 HPC 10, 995a.

Wandang Chŏnjip 阮堂全集

Weimojie suoshuo jing (Vimalakīrtinirdeśasūtra) 維摩詰所說經 T 475.14.

Wŏlsŏng chip 月城集 HPC 10. 389c.

Wudeng huiyuan 五燈會元 X 1565.80.

Wudeng quanshu 五燈全書 X 1571.81.

Wudeng yantong 五燈嚴統 X 1568.80.

Wujia zhengzong zan 五家正宗贊 X 1554.78.


Yongdam chip 龍潭集 HPC 9, 677b.

Yuanjuejing dashu shiyi chao 圓覺經大疏釋義鈔 X 245.09.

Xuemai lun 血脈論

Yuanjuejing lueshuzhichao 圓覺經略疏之鈔 X 248.09.

Yuanwu fugo chanshi yulu 圓悟佛果禪師語錄 T 1997.47.

Zhenzhou Linji Huizhao chanshi yulu 鎭州臨濟慧照禪師語錄 T 1985.47.

Zhiyue lu 指月錄 X 1578.83.
2. Secondary Texts


Chŏng Han-yŏng 정한영. 1998. “Chosŏn Hugi ŭi sŏnsasang yŏn’gu” 조선 후기의 선사상
연구. *Pulgyo Taehagwŏn Nonch’ong* 5.


Emmanuel, Steven M. 2013. A Companion to Buddhist Philosophy. West Sussex: John Wiley&Sons Ltd.


Gregory, Peter N. “Sudden Enlightenment Followed by Gradual Cultivation.” In Sudden and Gradual. op.cit.


Ha Mi-gyŏng 하미경. 2009. “Paekp’a wa Ch’oui u Sŏnni nonjaeng yŏn’gu” 백파와 초의의 선리논쟁연구. Dongguk University Ph.D. dissertation.


_____. 1976. “Paekp’a wa Ch’oui sidae sŏn u nonjaengjŏm” 백파와 초의 시대 선의 논쟁점. *Sungsan Pak Kil-chin paksa hwagap kinyŏm Han’guk pulgyo sasangsa* 승산 박길진박사 화갑기념 한국불교사상사. Wŏn’gwang taehakkyo ch’ulp’an’guk.


nonmunjip 5.


Kim Yong-jae 김용재. 2012. “Choson sidae panyangmyŏnghak munhŏn chosa mit ch’uch’ul ŭl t’onghan yangmyŏnghak pip’an naeyong ŭi sŏnghyang punsŏk kwa panyangmyŏnghak sajo ŭi hŭrum e nat’an an t’ukching yŏn’gu l” 조선시대 반양명학
문헌조사 및 추출을 통한 양명학비판 내용의 성향분석과 반양명학 사조의 흐름에 나타난 특징연구

1. Yangmyŏnghak 31: 105-141.


_____ 2007. “Chosŏn chunggugi yubul siin ŭi kyoryu yangsang: Tongak kwa Ch’usa ŭi yŏn’gu”
조선중후기 유불시인의 교류양상: 동악과 추사의 연구.  
Han’guk ŏmunhak yŏn’gu 48.


3. Internet Websites

CBETA, Chinese Buddhist Electronic Text Association
http://www.cbeta.org/

DB of Korean Classics
http://db.itkc.or.kr/itkcd/db/mainIndexIframe.jsp

Digital Dictionary of Buddhism
http://www.buddhism-dict.net/ddb/

Korean National Research Institute of Cultural Heritage
The Annals of the Chosŏn Dynasty
http://sillok.history.go.kr/main/main.jsp

The Electronic Collections of Korean Buddhist Texts: Han’guk Pulgyo Chŏnsŏ Retrieval System